

TEACHER'S

BOOK

Mission

C O U R S E B O O K

Virginia Evans
Jenny Dooley



Express Publishing



Express Publishing

Mission 1

Teacher's Book

Virginia Evans – Jenny Dooley



Express Publishing

Published by Express Publishing

**Liberty House, Greenham Business Park, Newbury,
Berkshire RG19 6HW**

Tel: (0044) 1635 817 363

Fax: (0044) 1635 817 463

e-mail: inquiries@expresspublishing.co.uk

<http://www.expresspublishing.co.uk>

© Virginia Evans – Jenny Dooley, 2000

Design and Illustration © Express Publishing, 2000

First edition 1996

Fourth impression 2012

Made in EU

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, photocopying or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the Publishers. Tests may be reproduced without permission for classroom use only.

Note: There are three photocopiable assessment tests in two versions. Each test is provided with a marking scheme based on a total of 20 marks.

This book is not meant to be changed in any way.

ISBN 978-1-84216-804-2

Contents

Unit 1	Part 1	5	Unit 5	Part 1	53
	Part 2	6		Part 2	55
	Part 3	8		Part 3	57
	Part 4	10		Part 4	58
	Exam Focus	11		Exam Focus	59
Unit 2	Part 1	15	Unit 6	Part 1	65
	Part 2	17		Part 2	67
	Part 3	18		Part 3	68
	Part 4	19		Part 4	69
	Exam Focus	20		Exam Focus	71
Unit 3	Part 1	28	Unit 7	Part 1	74
	Part 2	29		Part 2	75
	Part 3	31		Part 3	77
	Part 4	33		Part 4	78
	Exam Focus	34		Exam Focus	80
Unit 4	Part 1	41	Tests and Keys		
	Part 2	43	Test 1 A/B	85	
	Part 3	45	Test 2 A/B	97	
	Part 4	46	Test 3 A/B	109	
	Exam Focus	47	'Use of English' Section (pp. 182 - 196)	124	
			Revision Section (pp. 197 - 216)	128	

Unit 1

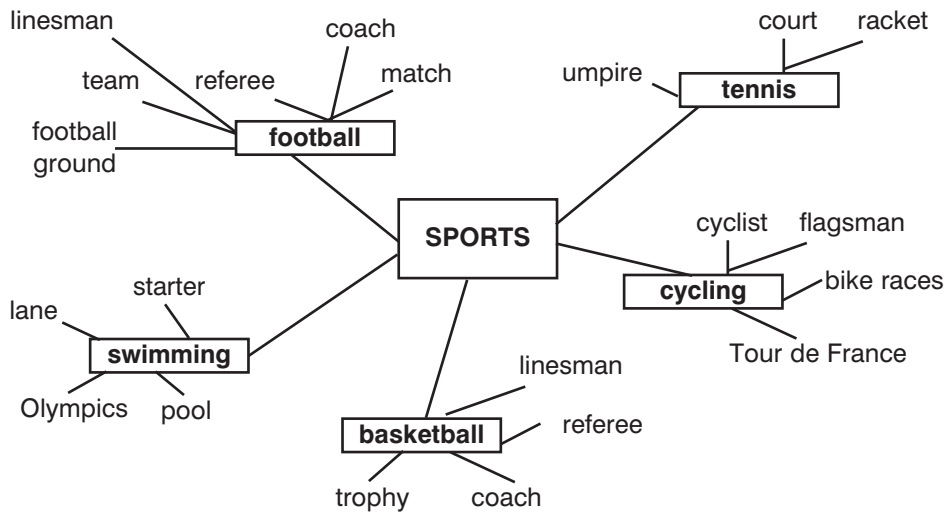
Part 1

➤ Warm-up Activities: Part 1 (p. 6)

• (Suggested answer)

Sports e.g. team, coach, match, pitch, tennis court, swimming pool, bicycle race, basketball, football, stadium, Olympics, medal, training programme, rowing, football strip etc.

As an alternative T draws on the board the following spidergram and writes down some words related to the topic (sports), then T asks Ss to come up with words related to each sport.



• (Suggested answer)

The text could be about cycling, racing, a cycling championship etc. because I can see cyclists competing. As an extension T can ask Ss to report on the most popular races in their country then comment on the dangers involved. e.g. Rally Acropolis is held every year in my country. Many drivers compete in it. It's quite dangerous though, because there are lots of injuries.

- a) True b) False c) False d) True

➤ Reading Task: Part 1 (pp. 6 - 7)

- 1 E 3 B 5 F 7 C
- 2 H 4 I 6 A

➤ Vocabulary Exercises: Part 1 (pp. 8 - 9)

(If Ss have difficulty explaining the words T should help Ss by eliciting the meaning. These words are tested in the next lesson after Ss have read aloud the relevant text. The same instructions apply to Ex. 2 in all units.)

favourites – those expected to win
compete in – take part in a competition

heading off – going somewhere in particular
tendon – body tissue that joins muscles to bone
paths – lines of direction
heightened – made more intense
suspense – excitement and anticipation
battle royal – grand challenge
calculating – able to arrange things to get what you want
strengths – strong points
to dismiss – to reject, not consider
victory – complete success
desire – wish
objective – aim or goal
ambition – desire to succeed
equally – same as

- 2** 1 an isolation 5 in anticipation of
 2 distinctive 6 obsession
 3 altitude 7 on the sidelines
 4 highlighted 8 culmination

(Ss should be encouraged to memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- 3** 1 to beat 6 to win
 2 complimentary 7 to take
 3 to come 8 to dismiss
 4 far 9 to step up
 5 a lifetime's

- 4** 1 odds and ends
 2 put an end to
 3 to make ends meet
 4 dead end
 5 light at the end of the tunnel
 6 brought to an end
 7 got the wrong end of the stick
 8 at a loose end

(Ss do Ex. 5 on their own then T checks answers giving/eliciting definitions for all distractors and explaining the slight differences between the words and how they are used.)

- 5** 1 train 2 alike 3 wounded 4 capacity

- 1 **train** (v) = to practise a sport regularly in order to improve, e.g. athletes train daily
instruct (v) = to teach (instruct sb to drive)
master (v) = to become expert at sth
discipline (v) = to train sb/oneself in a skill, behaviour etc.
 2 **like** (prep) = similar (followed by a noun)
alike (adj) = similar
identical to (adj) = exactly alike; having no differences. (However, we say: they are so alike that you can't tell them part).
same as (adj) = (followed by a noun) identical
 3 **damage** (v) = to harm sth (damage a car)
break (v) = to damage so that sth separates into pieces (break a glass, break your leg etc.)
spoil (v) = to ruin; go off (spoil the broth, spoil a child etc.)
wound (v) = to hurt a living thing (wounded soldiers etc.)
 4 **ability** (n) = skill or power needed to do sth
capability (n) = power to do sth
skill (n) = ability to do sth well
capacity (n) = ability to hold an amount/number of sth

- 6** 1 j 3 b 5 h 7 g 9 i
 2 a 4 d 6 f 8 e 10 c

➤ Follow-up Activities: Part 1 (p. 9)

- (Two CD's are available with all reading texts. T should encourage Ss to listen to the CD at home and follow the lines of each text. This activity should be assigned in all lessons and T should check Ss' pronunciation in each lesson. It is extremely important that this activity should **not** be skipped in any lesson and T should emphasise the need for Ss to become fluent and pronounce words correctly.)

• Comprehension Question / Answer Contest

(Suggested answers)

Group A S3: Will Miguel Indurain rest before taking part in the Tour de France?

Group B S3: No, he won't.

Group B S4: Is winning the Tour de France an obsession for Rominger?

Group A S4: No, isn't not.

Group A S5: Will Indurain take part in more than one race in his preparation for the Tour de France?

Group B S5: Yes, he will.

Group B S6: Does Rominger believe that Indurain is capable of winning the Tour de France?

Group A S6: Yes, he does. etc.

➤ Grammar Check: Part 1 (p. 9)

(T refers Ss to the Grammar Reference Section then Ss do the exercise. The same technique applies to all Grammar Checks.)

- 1 am going to 3 Shall 5 am going to
 2 will 4 will

Part 2

➤ Warm-up Activities: Part 2 (p. 10)

• (Suggested answer)

The article could be about the sea, travelling, high speed trains etc.

(T should ensure that Ss **listen** to the CD with books closed and anticipate the end of the story.)

• (Suggested answer)

The story could end with a fire breaking out and the train being evacuated/the passengers being injured and trapped in the tunnel etc.

➤ **Reading Task: Part 2 (pp. 10 - 11)**

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 8 A (Ln 1) | 12 B (Ln 18 - 19) |
| 9 B (Ln 3) | 13 C (Ln 20 - 22) |
| 10 B (Ln 7 - 8) | 14 D (Ln 36 - 38) |
| 11 A (Ln 15 - 16) | 15 D (Ln 38 - 40) |

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 2 (pp. 12 - 13)**

- 1 railway complex** – all the buildings on a railway site
brand-new – completely new
immigration points – points where people entering a country have their documents checked
loudspeaker – device to increase the volume of someone's voice
predictably – as one would have guessed
underground – metro, subway
cross-channel – across the English Channel
undoubtedly – most certainly

- 2** 1 d 3 b 5 i 7 f 9 g
 2 h 4 e 6 j 8 c 10 a

- 3** 1 expectations 4 failure
 2 attractive 5 Undoubtedly/Doubtless
 3 unpredictable 6 requirements

- 4** (*Ss should be encouraged to memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.*)

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1 halfway | 6 a crew |
| 2 to deal with | 7 we shot back |
| 3 double-checker | 8 a fire alarm |
| 4 the crossing | 9 the cry of |
| 5 to hit | |

- 5** (*Ss do Ex. 5 then T elicits/presents the differences between speak, talk, say or tell.*)

- | | | |
|------------|---------|---------|
| 1 tell | 3 speak | 5 talks |
| 2 speaking | 4 say | 6 talk |

speak: to sb/well/badly/English etc./for oneself

talk: to sb about sth

say: sth to sb/that/good morning etc./one's prayers/a few words/so/no more/for certain/for sure etc.

tell: sb to do sth/sb that/sb how to do sth/the truth/a lie/sb the time/sb one's name/a story/sb a secret/sb the way/one from another/sb's fortune/sb so/the difference etc.

- 6** (*After Ss have done Ex. 6 T checks answers giving/eliciting definitions for all distractors.*)

- | | | |
|---------------|----------------|----------|
| 1 opportunity | 3 requirements | 5 rugged |
| 2 steering | 4 recruits | |

- 1 A **occasion** (n) = a particular time when it's possible to do sth
 B **opportunity** (n) = chance
 C **luck** (n) = success usu unexpected
 D **fortune** (n) = chance/luck usually affecting people's lives
- 2 A **drive** (v) = to operate and control the direction of a vehicle (car, train, bus etc.)
 B **lead** (v) = to show sb the way, esp by going in front (e.g. the guide led us round the museum)
 C **tour** (v) = to make a journey usually for pleasure and to see places of interest (e.g. tour of France)
 D **steer** (v) = to direct the movement of a boat/car (to steer a boat, to steer a car)
- 3 A **requirement** (n) = thing that is demanded/needed
 B **desire** (n) = strong wish to have/do sth
 C **request** (n) = thing that is asked for
 D **inquiry** (n) = request for help/information about sth
- 4 A **hire** (v) = to give sb a job/position (hire sb, also hire a hall/boat etc.)
 B **engage** (v) = to arrange to employ sb
 C **recruit** (v) = to find new people to join a company/organisation
 D **dismiss** (v) = to fire sb
- 5 A **smooth** (adj) = having an even surface, without rough patches
 B **even** (adj) = level, smooth, flat
 C **crude** (adj) = in its natural state, not refined
 D **rugged** (adj) = rough and uneven

- 7** a **car** – get in (to), get out of, drive steer
 a **train** – catch, miss, disembark from, get on(to), get off, take, drive
 a **plane** – catch, miss, get on(to), get off, take, board, disembark from
 a **motorbike** – get on, get off, ride, steer
 a **boat** – miss, disembark from, get on, get off, catch, steer
 a **bus** – catch, miss, get on to, get off, take, drive
 a **bicycle** – get on(to), get off, ride, steer
 a **ship** – disembark from, get on, get off, board
 a **taxi** – catch, get in(to), get out of, take, drive, steer

- 8** 1 out 4 through 7 after
 2 down with 5 over
 3 along with 6 ahead with

- 9** 2 roar 6 squeal 10 bark
 3 purr 7 moo 11 squeak
 4 buzz 8 quack 12 chirp
 5 howl 9 neigh

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 2 (p. 13)**

• **(Suggested answer)**

SA: I'd like to travel by boat because I like the sea a lot.

SB: Well, I'd like to travel by aeroplane because it's the quickest way of travelling etc.

SA: I'd use the plane because to me it's the safest means of transport.

SB: That's true. I'd choose the car though, because you can stop wherever you want and enjoy the scenery etc.

• **(Suggested answers)**

SA: I'd like to travel by plane because it's the fastest means of transport.

SB: Well, actually I hate travelling by plane. It scares me. I prefer travelling by car so that I can stop wherever I want and enjoy the scenery etc.

SA: Travelling by boat is slower and more relaxing than travelling by car.

SB: However, travelling by car is more convenient than travelling by boat.

SA: Travelling by motorbike is more dangerous than travelling by bus.

SB: Yes, but travelling by motorbike is also faster than travelling by bus.

SA: Travelling by plane is faster than travelling by train.

SB: However, travelling by train is more economical than travelling by plane.

SA: Travelling by taxi is more comfortable than travelling by bus.

SB: However, travelling by bus is less expensive than travelling by taxi.

SA: Travelling by bicycle is less polluting and more leisurely than travelling by car.

SB: Yes, but travelling by car is more convenient and faster than travelling by bicycle.

SA: Travelling by train is more reliable and pleasant than travelling by bus.

SB: However, travelling by bus is more economical than travelling by train.

SA: Travelling by train is faster and more reliable than travelling by boat.

SB: However, travelling by boat is less cramped and more leisurely than travelling by plane, etc.

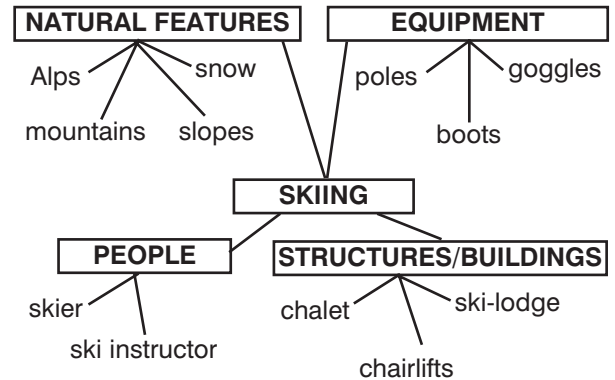
➤ **Grammar Check: Part 2 (p. 13)**

- | | | |
|---------|---------|-------|
| 1 which | 3 whose | 5 why |
| 2 where | 4 who | |

Part 3

➤ **Warm-up Activities: Part 3 (p. 14)**

T draws the following diagram on the board divided into four sections, then elicits from Ss words related to natural features, people, equipment and structures/buildings.



• **(Suggested answers)**

Indoor activities: squash, tennis, boxing, basketball, snooker, swimming, ice hockey etc.

Outdoor activities: football, rugby, tennis, basketball, hockey, skiing, horse riding etc.

- a No b No c Yes d Yes

➤ **Reading Task: Part 3 (pp. 14 - 15)**

- 16 E 17 G 18 D 19 H 20 A 21 F

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 3 (pp. 16 - 17)**

- 1 head off** – set off for somewhere
- slope** – area raised above the ground
- excursions** – outings
- estate developer** – company which builds on empty sites
- department store** – large shop selling various products
- employee** – person who works for someone
- check it out** – have a look at it
- refrigerator** – appliance used to keep things cold
- heat** – warmth
- unique** – one of a kind
- spray** – cover with small drops of liquid
- leisure** – relaxation
- powdery** – having the texture of powder
- microns** – very small units of measurement
- asserts** – claims
- chairlifts** – chairs which you sit on to be carried up a hill
- fake** – not real

- 2**
- | | |
|----------------------|--------------|
| 1 steel and concrete | 5 nozzle |
| 2 courtesy | 6 compressed |
| 3 insulation | 7 misty |
| 4 whisked | 8 steep |

- 3** (Ss do Ex. 3 on their own then T explains/elicits the meanings of the highlighted words.)

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 1 convert | 3 influence |
| 2 persuade | 4 convince |

convert = change into

persuade = cause sb to believe sth

influence = affect

convince = make sb feel certain

- 4** (Ss should be encouraged to memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- | | | |
|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1 experienced | 4 to miss out | 7 ski |
| 2 skiing | 5 sandy | 8 to spread |
| 3 to charge | 6 entrance | 9 scientific |

- 5** 1 base 2 internal 3 well-off 4 forbid

- 6** (Ss do Ex. 6 on their own, then T explains/elicits the definition of each word.)

- | | | |
|-------------|-----------|---------------|
| 1 tenant | 3 native | 5 inhabitants |
| 2 residents | 4 citizen | 6 dwellers |

tenant = person who pays rent to a landlord to use a house, room, flat etc.

residents = someone who lives in a place permanently

native = local inhabitant

citizen = person who has full rights as a member of a country; person who lives in a town

inhabitant = person living in a place

dweller = person living in a specified place (used especially in compound nouns)

- 7**
- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 speed trap | 4 high speed |
| 2 More haste less speed | 5 picked up speed |
| 3 full speed | 6 at lightning speed |
| | 7 to speed up |

- 8**
- | | | |
|-----------|--------------|--------|
| 1 pants | 4 poles | 7 lift |
| 2 boots | 5 slopes | 8 jump |
| 3 goggles | 6 instructor | |

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 3 (p. 17)**

- **a** Ryosuke Uematsu
- **b** Funabashi, a town 30 minutes east of Tokyo
- **c** \$364 million
- **d** Two
- **e** Restaurant, TV, swimming pool, sauna
- **f** \$35

(Suggested answer)

The world's largest indoor-ski facility has been built in Funabashi, Japan, a town 30 minutes east of Tokyo by train. The resort cost \$364 million to build and has two ski slopes – one for beginners and one for more experienced skiers. The manager of the resort, Ryosuke Uematsu, says that to get the same high-quality snow elsewhere, one would have to travel to the mountains of northern Japan. While waiting to ski, visitors can eat, watch TV, swim or sit in a sauna. The entrance fee is \$35.

- **(Suggested answer)**

Last summer I visited the resort of **Brighton** which is on the **south coast of England**, fifty miles from **London**. Apart from **swimming** in the sea, there were **plenty of things to do**, like **go to the funfair**, **visit the Dolphinarium**, **walk along the pier**, **visit Brighton Pavilion**, and **ride on Volk's Railway**, a mini-train that runs along the seafront. At night there were many different forms of **entertainment** to choose from. There are a lot of **night clubs**, or you can go to the **theatre**, or to see a film at the **cinema**. We stayed at the **Grand Hotel**, a luxurious hotel on the seafront, but there are also **dozens of smaller hotels** or **bed and breakfasts** to stay in, which are cheaper.

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 3 (p. 17)**

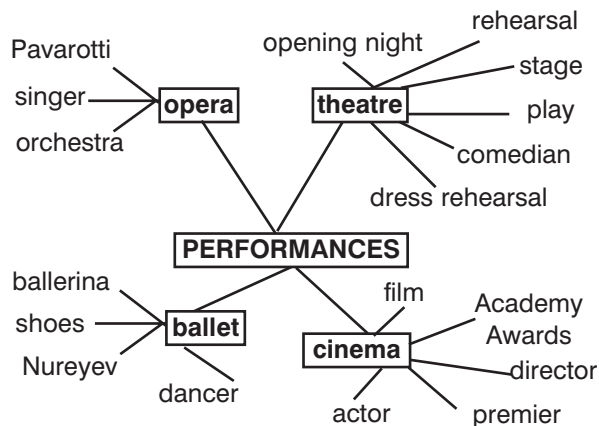
- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1 needn't have | 4 mustn't |
| 2 needn't | 5 didn't need to |
| 3 didn't need to | 6 needn't have |

Part 4

➤ Warm-up Activities: Part 4 (p. 18)

T draws the following diagram on the board divided into four sections, then he/she invites Ss to come up with as many words as possible related to performances.

(Suggested answers)



I like going to the cinema sometimes, if there is a good film showing. I also like going out for coffee with my friends, or playing billiards or video games. etc.

- a F b F c T d F

➤ Reading Task: Part 4 (pp. 18 - 19)

- 22 F 26/27 G, H, in any order 34 H
- 23 B 28/29 B, G, in any order 35 C
- 24 D 30/31 C, D, in any order
- 25 A 32/33 A, D, in any order

➤ Vocabulary Exercises: Part 4 (p. 20)

- 1 memorable** – that which will be remembered
- blend with** – are mixed with
- delivered with** – performed with
- vocal coach** – singing instructor
- manipulating** – controlling
- tames** – makes sth manageable
- swallows** – moves sth from mouth to stomach
- opaque** – not transparent
- twinkle** – sparkle
- anguish** – misery, torment
- to pursue** – to follow
- animates** – brings sth to life
- coarse** – rude/without manners

2 (Before Ss do Ex. 2 T asks Ss questions about Batman as warm-up e.g. Have you seen 'Batman Forever'? Did you enjoy it? Would you like to go and see it? etc. Then Ss do Ex. 2.)

- 1 cast 5 plot 9 director
- 2 winner 6 sensational 10 captures
- 3 villains 7 breathtaking 11 masterpiece
- 4 evil 8 passion 12 contemporary

3 (Ss should be encouraged to memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- 1 a gift 4 overflowing 7 climbed
- 2 a memorable 5 major 8 to die
- 3 performing 6 eccentric 9 vocal

4 (Ss do Ex. 4 on their own, then T elicits/explains the meanings of the highlighted words.)

- 1 to act 3 to perform 5 to perform
- 2 to play 4 to execute 6 to execute

act = perform a part in a play or film; be an actor/actress

play = take part in a game

perform = 1) do as one has agreed to do (e.g. perform an operation); 2) act and play, play music

execute = perform a task (e.g. execute a plan)

➤ Follow-up Activities: Part 4 (p. 20)

- (T should write on the board useful vocabulary for film reviews, e.g. the film is set in, the film is called, it tells the story of, it's a love story/science-fiction/comedy etc, it is well directed, the plot centres on, I can thoroughly recommend, the plot is rather unconvincing, it's a masterpiece of its kind, etc.)

(Suggested answer)

The film 'Sense and Sensibility' starring Emma Thompson and Hugh Grant and directed by Ang Lee, is a romantic film adapted from the book by Jane Austen.

It tells the story of two sisters who are completely different in character, and their experiences with the men they love.

'Sense and Sensibility' manages to recreate the atmosphere of early 19th century England, which helps the film-goer to understand the reasons for some of the characters' actions, and is both humorous and moving. Although the film is not particularly exciting in terms of action, it is dramatic enough to keep you wondering what's going to happen next. I can thoroughly recommend going to see it if you feel like a change from modern-day violent and shocking films.

Exam Focus – Use of English (p. 21)

(Part 2 is a modified open-cloze consisting of 15 blanks to be filled in with one word each. Emphasis is placed on grammar and vocabulary. Ss read the text once to get the gist of the text, then re-read and fill in the missing words. Ss read the text once more to see if the text makes sense and check for spelling mistakes.)

➤ Part 2

1 over	6 but	11 be
2 which/that	7 thoughts/ones	12 able/taught
3 who	8 themselves	13 by
4 from	9 that/which	14 these/such
5 more	10 so	15 likely

(Part 3 consists of 10 discrete items with a lead-in sentence and a gapped response to complete using a given word. Grammar and vocabulary are tested in this part. Ss read the lead-in sentence and the given word and think how it can be used grammatically in the gapped response, then write their answers, keeping the meaning similar to that of the lead-in sentence. Ss have to keep in mind that they must use two to five words (the given word counts) to fill in the second sentence. Ss re-read their final answers checking for correct spelling and grammatical accuracy.)

➤ Part 3

- ... did not find the story
- ... quicker at typing than
- ... having trained
- ... until the children left before
- ... a diamond ring which was
- ... was run over by
- ... wondered whether she would ever
- ... apologised for being
- ... stand being laughed
- ... to bring up a child

➤ Prepositions

(This exercise will always be assigned as HW. T checks the answers and in the next lesson he/she checks the exercise usually with closed books.)

- e.g. T: close your books
to be ___ isolation
S1: to be **in** isolation
T: to come ___ an end
S2: to come **to** an end etc.

1 in	8 in	15 of	21 of
2 to	9 of	16 of	22 in
3 on	10 of	17 on	23 with
4 with	11 at/for	18 at	24 off/for
5 about	12 by	19 at	25 of/about
6 for	13 on	20 in	
7 of	14 in	21 of	

Exam Focus – Listening (Part 1) (p. 22)

(Part 1 focuses on understanding main points, location, roles, function, attitude, feelings, opinions, intentions etc. It consists of eight short unrelated extracts of about 30 seconds each, followed by three option multiple choice answers. While listening for the first time, Ss look out for key words related to one of the three choices, paying attention to what is heard because these key words may be included in the incorrect choice. While listening to the extracts again, Ss check their answers.)

Part 1	1 A	3 A	5 B	7 A
	2 B	4 C	6 C	8 C

Part 1

You'll hear people talking in eight different situations. For Questions 1 to 8, choose the best answer, A, B or C.

- 1** You will hear a boy talking about sports. Which sport does he mostly play at the moment?

- A volleyball
B football
C hockey

Boy: Well, I have to say I was mad about football for a while and I still like it of course, but I've been really into volleyball for the past three years. I've been thinking about taking up hockey lately, but my friends all say it's a boring sport and to stick to what I'm good at. I'd really like a bit of a change though.

- 2** You will hear someone talking about the weather in London at Christmas. What is the weather normally like?

- A snowy
B dull
C sunny

Woman: Most people think we always have white Christmas in England. That'll be the day! I mean, yes, of course there's snow in Scotland – well, in the Highlands anyway – but to be honest every Christmas that I can remember has been your average dark, miserable day. There's the odd ray of sunshine now and then, but generally it's just gloomy.

- 3** You will hear two girls discussing what to do on Saturday night. Where do they decide to go?
 A the local disco
 B the cinema
 C the roller-skating rink

Anna: Well, I suppose we could go to the cinema. What's on at the moment?

Fiona: Oh, that film with William Hill. I'd like to see it, but you're not keen on him.

Anna: Not really. How about the disco around the corner?

Fiona: Maybe ... or we could even go to the new roller-skating rink in town.

Anna: Let's stick with having a good dance instead.

- 4** You work in an office where you overhear the following conversation. What is the boss worried about?
 A the company financial position
 B his speech at the board meeting
 C his dinner guests

Boss: Well, Mary, I'm just not sure what to do about tonight. I've got that speech to give at the board meeting and then I've got to rush straight home. We've got people coming for dinner.

Mary: So what's the problem?

Boss: Well one of the guests is a financial director, and a very important one, and another is a university professor. How can I keep them entertained?

Mary: Well, I think ... (fade out)

- 5** Listen to this actor talking about his life. Where did he meet his wife?
 A at a shooting gallery
 B at a cinema
 C on a film set

Actor: You see, I'd just about completed the film 'Dark Dance' and, er – well, it was kind of strange how we met. We'd been shooting all day and I decided I wanted to see a movie. It was 'Tall Boys' – somebody'd recommended it. Anyway, just as the film started this woman sat next to me and sort of – I don't know how it happened – spilled her coke all over me! And that's how we got to know each other.

- 6** Listen to this woman talking about her car. Why is she happy with it?
 A It is an antique car
 B It is a nice colour
 C It is reliable

Woman: Actually I've had this car for nearly 20 years. I know it's a bit old and there's a lot of rust on it. It's not very fast either, and it doesn't even look that good – I mean, the colour's completely out of fashion, isn't it? But it does get me from A to B and, back again – in fact it's never let me down, and that's why I keep it.

- 7** You will hear a reporter talking about earthquakes. When did the one in Mexico take place?
 A last week
 B three months ago
 C last year

Reporter: Well, if you think back to last year, you'll remember that terrible earthquake that struck Kobe, Japan. And then there's the most recent disaster in Mexico City which shook the capital a week ago and measured 6.5 on the Richter scale. However, these two are nothing compared to the quake that hit one of Mexico's neighbours about 12 weeks ago, causing thousands of ... (fade out)

- 8** You overhear this conversation between two colleagues. What are they looking for?
 A a briefcase
 B a report
 C a computer disc

Paul: I know it's here somewhere. I put it down when I went to help Doug and ...

Diane: Have you looked in your briefcase?

Paul: My briefcase isn't here – I left it behind this morning.

Diane: Oh, right. Oh, **no!** The final report's in it, isn't it?

Paul: I'm not worried about that – we've got copies of it. It's the stuff we haven't even printed out I'm worried about.

Exam Focus – Speaking (p. 21)

➤ Part 1

(**Part 1** lasts about four minutes and has to do with socialising and giving personal information. Ss should be able to talk about themselves for about two minutes.)

➤ Part 2

(Part 2 lasts last about four minutes and focuses on exchanging personal and factual information based on given visual prompts. Ss are given two colour photographs each and they have to talk about them in relation to themselves without being interrupted and helped by the T. They are also asked to comment briefly on each other's pictures.)

(Suggested answers)

- **Picture A** shows sb show jumping whereas **picture B** shows a motor race. Both pictures have to do with professional competitive sports.
- I'd prefer to watch show jumping as I love horses and I think it is very exciting.
- No, I don't think professional sportsmen should be paid highly because they are supposed to promote the sport they play, without becoming greedy.
- Yes, I would like to be a professional sportsman as I would like to be able to play my favourite sport all day instead of sitting in an office. I enjoy being active.
- **Picture C** is of a masked play whereas **picture D** shows a choir singing.
- I'd prefer to go and watch the play, because I think the actors look very funny in their masks.
- Yes, I can play the clarinet. I practise every day and I have a lesson once a week.
- I would like to have music and drama lessons at school, because I think they're an important part of education. I would like to sing in a choir, and act in a play with my school friends.

Exam Focus – Writing (p. 24)

(T presents the theory and it is important that Ss should memorise all outlines. T checks them next lesson. The same technique applies to all writing sections of this book.)

- 1** 1 Model 1 4 Model 2 7 Model 2 (story)
 2 Model 2 5 Model 2 Model 1 (factual)
 3 Model 1 6 Model 1 report

2 (Suggested answer)

Traffic in London has been disrupted all day due to striking bus drivers. Traffic is being monitored by police, but many main roads are still blocked, causing long tailbacks and (a number of) accidents have already been reported. The main reasons for the strike are the growing number of attacks on

drivers and the bus company's refusal to provide them with greater protection. The drivers' union has demanded an increase in the number of security staff employed by the bus company. An emergency meeting was called by the bus company's management this morning, which resulted in an offer to hold talks with the drivers' union. Bob Brown, head of the drivers' union, warned that more strikes would take place if management's promises were not fulfilled.

3 Height: short, medium-height**Build:** tiny, slim, muscular, overweight, plump**Face:** oval, long, freckled, ugly, attractive, wrinkled**Eyes:** blue, dark, brown, almond-shaped, slanting, attractive**Nose:** straight, upturned, long, broken, crooked, Roman**Hair:** short, straight, dark, brown, wavy, blond, long**Clothes:** shabby, elegant, attractive, fashionable, wrinkled

- 4** 1 reliable 6 patient
 2 unstable 7 intelligent
 3 lazy 8 generous
 4 boring 9 lively
 5 optimistic 10 practical

5 (Suggested answer)

Malcolm is very **reserved**; he never expresses his emotions.

Mary is a **sensible** girl. She would never do anything stupid.

Jane is extremely **selfish**; she never shares anything.

The policeman was very **helpful**, and told me how to get to Buckingham Palace.

James is so **unreliable** that you can never depend on him to be on time.

Charlotte can be **silly** at times and acts just like a child.

My son is very **honest**; he always tells the truth.

Ann can be **unpredictable** at times – you never know what she's going to do.

Michael is very **serious**, he hardly ever laughs.

It was **dishonest** of you to blame Claire when it was you who had crashed the car.

Brian is so **pessimistic**; he always thinks the worst is going to happen.

Liz is a **sociable** person; she enjoys the company of other people.

Tom is **witty** and fun to be with because he always finds something clever to say.

Daniel is always **amusing** and makes everyone laugh.
 Lucy is a **pleasant** girl; she's nice and easy to get along with.
 Keith is rather **dull**; all he talks about is his stamp collection.
 Her baby is very **curious**; she is interested in everything that goes on around her.
 Edward is fairly **naive** for his age; there are a lot of things he doesn't know.

6 (Suggested answer)

- Sentences are not expanded upon, writing does not 'flow'.
 Very few personal comments and feelings included.
 Outline for description of person not followed.
 Paragraphs are not developed.
 All adjectives clustered together with no justification given for each adjective.
 Negative qualities aren't softened by using mild language.
- a) **unfriendly/shy**: because he wasn't speaking to anyone
patient/tolerant: he never hurries you or gets angry if he's kept waiting
kind: he often feeds stray dogs and cats
careless: often makes mistakes at work
never rude: helps all the customers in the bookshop
 b) The fourth paragraph
 c) The last paragraph

(As an extension T can ask Ss to write about a person they admire following the outline on p. 26 S's Book.)

(Note: static suggest no movement at all)

7	1 static	7 static	13 static
	2 static	8 static	14 moving
	3 moving	9 moving	15 static
	4 static	10 moving	16 static
	5 moving	11 moving	17 moving
	6 static	12 moving	18 static

8 a	1 along	3 up	5 rise
	2 Behind	4 covered	6 From

- b beautiful, perfect, fragrant, fresh, colourful, busy, delicious, thick, old, wooden-beamed, peaceful, noisy.
Para 1: Name and geographical situation of the place.
Para 2: Reason for choosing the place.
Para 3: Particular details about the place.
Para 4: Feelings and final thoughts about the place.

- c beautiful, fragrant, fresh, colourful, struck, view, delicious, smell, aroma, peaceful, silence, noisy activities

d (Suggested answer)

I come from Tavistock, a small town in southwest England. It has a population of about 3,000 people, and is surrounded by the beautiful countryside of Dartmoor.
 Tavistock is a quiet town, and people who are used to city life might find it boring. I think that it is a lovely place to relax. It has a gorgeous town centre, with lots of places to eat and traditional market and there are endless walks to take in the surrounding countryside. The people are extremely friendly, and if you prefer cities, it is only twenty miles away from Plymouth. I think that Tavistock is a charming place and if you like small towns where life is relaxed, then I'm sure you will think so too.

- 9 Opinion**: childish, disgusting
Size/Weight: enormous, light, little, heavy
Age: ancient, modern, new
Shape: round, flat, square
Colour: purple, red, black
Origin: Spanish, British, Chinese
Material: rubber, steel, metal

- 10** Old square leather, small dark leather, tiny round metal, interesting colourful paper, small silver metal, new black plastic, lightweight grey Japanese

(As an extension T asks Ss to describe other objects e.g. glasses, bag, chair. T writes these on the board and elicits from Ss relevant vocabulary)
glasses: gold-rimmed, bi-focal lenses, blue-tinted
bag: black, leather, suede, gold, metal squares
chair: wooden, varnished, hand-carved, leather, soft

(Then Ss write a paragraph including a description of the objects.)

glasses: When my father arrived home yesterday, he realised he had left his glasses at the office. He called his secretary and told her to look for a pair of gold-rimmed, blue-tinted glasses with bi-focal lenses which were inside a burgundy hard-plastic, embossed case and were probably lying on his desk.

bag: When my sister said she was going shopping I asked her to buy me a bag that I'd had my eye on. I told her it was a black leather bag with brown, suede patches on it and small, gold, metal squares around the top.

chair: When her mother went to the auction she was looking for a particular style of antique chair. The chair was wooden, varnished and hand-carved with Queen Anne legs and soft brown leather seat. She bid the highest and was lucky to purchase it.

11 1 C 2 E 3 B 4 A 5 D

1 **C** – is a factual report, formal style, use of passive voice, only facts.

2 **E** – story, informal style, detailed and chatty descriptions.

3 **B** – story, informal style, chatty language

4 **A** – factual report, formal style, use of passive voice, only facts, high level of vocabulary.

5 **D** – factual report, formal style, high level of vocabulary, only facts.

12 1 B 3 D 5 C 7 G
2 E 4 F 6 A

(Suggested answer)

Story: The sun was shining as we got into the plane. Robert was making jokes. I could never have guessed what was about to happen.

We'd been flying for about ten minutes when there was a loud bang, and smoke began to pour out of the propeller. We were scared, but Robert pointed out a place where we could land. The plane was difficult to control, and we crashed violently into the ground. Robert and I were knocked unconscious. We would have died, but luckily a passer-by saw the crash and got us out just seconds before the plane exploded. I'd never fly again now. Incidents like that make you realise how valuable life is. The man was awarded a medal for bravery which he deserved: he could've been killed as well!

Report: Two men were injured last Wednesday when their plane crashed into a field in Dorset.

Luckily, they were rescued in an amazing feat of bravery just seconds before their plane exploded. Robert Johnson (32) and Samuel Worthing (28) had been in the air for about ten minutes when Robert noticed black smoke pouring out of the propeller. The controls of the plane stopped working, and the plane was forced to crash-land in a nearby field. Lucily Philip Vikes (25) had seen the incident, and was able to drag the two pilots out of the plane seconds before it exploded. Philip was later awarded a medal for bravery.

'I'd never fly again now,' said Samuel afterwards. 'Incidents like that make you realise how valuable life really is.' Robert is also said to be in a state of shock.

(T reads the best compositions aloud.)

Unit 2

Part 1

➤ Warm-up Activities: Part 1 (p. 30)

(Suggested answer)

- The picture shows some vegetables (carrots, lettuce, tomatoes etc.) and some fruit (apples, grapes, etc.). There's also some brown bread and some spaghetti. The text could be about healthy eating.
- Not much actually. I think that diabetes is caused by the body not producing enough insulin, the hormone that controls the amount of sugar in blood. Diabetics have to avoid eating foods containing sugar and fat.

a F c T e T
b F d T f F

➤ Reading Task: Part 1 (pp. 30 - 31)

1 A 2 C 3 H 4 G 5 D 6 B

➤ Vocabulary Exercises: Part 1 (pp. 32 - 33)

- 1** 1 hormones 5 treatment
2 insulin 6 consumption
3 pancreas 7 fibre
4 disorder 8 cornerstone

2 (Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- | | | |
|------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1 fat-free | 4 starchy | 7 to follow |
| 2 daily | 5 to generate | 8 to control |
| 3 to enjoy | 6 short-term | 9 weight |

3 (Ss do Ex. 3, then T elicits/explains the four distractors of each sentence.)

- | | | |
|-----------|------------|---------|
| 1 control | 4 achieved | 7 false |
| 2 reduce | 5 remove | 8 lean |
| 3 rise | 6 treated | |

- check** – to make sure sth is correct e.g. an answer for spelling mistakes.
examine – to look at sth carefully e.g. under a microscope.
control – to regulate sth
test – to try sth for a short while
- reduce** – to make smaller in size/quantity/amount/degree
weaken – to become less strong
shrink – to contract
shorten – to make sth smaller in length
- rise** (rose-risen) (int v) – increase
raise (tr v) – to make higher
arise (arose-arisen) – (of problems, difficulties etc.) to occur
grow up – to become older and more mature
- manage to do sth** – to be successful in doing sth

- acquire** – to get
achieve sth – to succeed in doing sth after a lot of effort
succeed (in) – to have been able to do sth
- remove** – to take away
delete – to rub sth out e.g. a line of writing on the computer
extract – to pull out e.g. a tooth/information
take out – to get e.g. a book from the library
 - treat** – to deal with sb/sth in a particular way
behave – to act a certain way
use – to take advantage of sb
operate – to cause sth to work e.g. a machine
 - artificial** – sth that is not natural e.g. light from a lightbulb, flowers
fake – sth which is made to seem real e.g. a painting
false – sth which is not real e.g. teeth
counterfeit – sth which has been made to make people think it is real e.g. money
 - bony** – extremely thin
skinny – underweight
thin – not fat
lean – with no fat

- 4**
- | | | |
|--------|-----------|--------------------|
| 1 off | 6 in | 11 away from |
| 2 up | 7 across | 12 into |
| 3 away | 8 after | 13 through |
| 4 up | 9 over | 14 up against/into |
| 5 out | 10 out of | |

	weight	heart	the target	a train	one's way	the chance	luggage	the plane	money
lose	✓	✓			✓		✓		✓
miss			✓	✓		✓		✓	

- 6** 1 c 2 d 3 e 4 a 5 f 6 b

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 1 (p. 33)**

MEMORY QUIZ (Suggested answer)

- should eat** – low fat butter and cheese; fat-free milk; 'diet' foods and drinks; artificial sweetener; fruit; vegetables; beans; lentils; brown bread; brown flour; high-fibre breakfast cereals
should avoid – sweets; chocolate; cakes; biscuits; sugar; white bread; butter; cheese; chicken skin; cooking with large amounts of fat

(Suggested answers)

- Having diabetes does not mean** that you cannot lead a normal life. **It is advisable** to control your body weight and weigh yourself

weekly. **It is highly recommended** that you eat a lot of fruit, vegetables and starchy food. **It is appropriate** to choose to eat brown bread instead of white, as well as high-fibre breakfast cereals. **You should avoid** eating cakes, biscuits, sweets and chocolate as they usually contain large amounts of sugar and fat.

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 1 (p. 33)**

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1 have forgotten | 7 have come |
| 2 to have arrived | 8 to hire |
| 3 have stayed | 9 have been |
| 4 not to eat | 10 get |
| 5 have been working | 11 have been |
| 6 be feeling | 12 have been waiting |

Part 2

➤ Warm-up Activities: Part 2 (p. 34)

(Suggested answers)

- I think that the two girls were too afraid to stay alone in the house, especially Caroline, so they tried to persuade Mr Helstone to take them with him. Mr Helstone didn't agree, and left them at home asking them to lock all doors and not to open them to anyone. After Mr Helstone had left, some soldiers attacked the house and took the two girls hostage. A possible title for the story is 'Night of Terror.'
- You can have a burglar alarm installed and special locks on all your doors and windows fitted. I don't think I would keep a weapon because I don't know how to use one. Shirley was given two pistols. Then the two girls had supper and Caroline was given a knife. They didn't go to bed, but waited for something to happen. A troop of men approached the house making the dog bark. Caroline was scared to death. Fortunately, the troop left without attacking the house and the girls decided to go to bed.

➤ Reading Task: Part 2 (pp. 34 - 35)

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 7 B (Ln 3) | 11 D (Ln 26 - 28) |
| 8 D (Ln 9 - 10) | 12 B (Ln 30) |
| 9 A (Ln 14) | 13 A (Ln 41 - 42) |
| 10 B (Ln 20 - 21) | |

➤ Vocabulary Exercises: Part 2 (pp. 36 - 37)

- 1** 1 guardian 4 riot 7 incidents
2 fainted 5 tread 8 bolt
3 disturbance 6 resumed

- 2** (Ss do Ex. 2 on their own, then T while checking their answers elicits/explains all four distractors for each sentence.)

1 A 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 C 6 D

- 1 **trouble** (n) – problems/difficulty
nuisance (n) – sth annoying
anxiety (n) – feeling of nervousness and worry
problem (n) – unsatisfactory situation
- 2 **disturb** (v) – to make sb feel worried and upset
annoy (v) – to make sb feel slightly angry
bother (v) – to cause problems for sb
frustrate (v) – to make sb angry because they can't find a solution

- 3 **shiver** (v) – to shake esp because of cold or terror
tremble (v) – to shake from fear, cold, weakness etc.
stutter (v) – to say sth, esp the first part of a word, with difficulty
shudder (v) – to shake with fear
- 4 **violently** (adv) – creating physical damage
fiercely (adv) – with anger
stormily (adv) – being angry in a loud way
intensely (adv) – in an extreme way
- 5 **storage** (n) – place where one keeps things for future use
attic (n) – room under the roof of a house for storage
cellar (n) – room under the ground floor of a house usu for storage
loft (n) – space under the roof of a house for storage
- 6 **walk** (v) – to move by putting one foot in front of the other
stride (v) – to walk with long steps
stroll (v) – to walk slowly and in a relaxed way
march (v) – to walk with regular steps (esp soldiers)

- 3** 1 behave 2 treat 3 behave 4 treat

- 4** (Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- | | | |
|------------|-----------|--------------|
| 1 to place | 4 went | 7 to put out |
| 2 to watch | 5 to fall | 8 the need |
| 3 growing | 6 to lean | 9 resumed |

- 5** 1 behaviour 6 amazement
2 possibility 7 undoubtedly
3 disturbance 8 interruption
4 nervously 9 courageous
5 cautiously 10 arrangements

- (As an extension Ss talk about a nasty experience of their own.)

- 6** 1 out 3 down to 5 away 7 on
2 through 4 forward 6 off 8 up

- 7** 1 do 6 make 11 do 16 make
2 do 7 do 12 make 17 make
3 make 8 make 13 make 18 do
4 do 9 do 14 do 19 make
5 make 10 make 15 do 20 make

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 2 (p. 37)****(Suggested answer)**

It was 2.30 in the morning. Samantha and Philip Matthews and their three children were asleep upstairs in their beautiful brand new home, when Samantha was woken up by a noise downstairs.

She nudged her husband but he was fast asleep, so she decided to go down and investigate. She slowly crept out of bed and went down the stairs.

When she got to the bottom of the stairs, she listened out for the sound again, but it had stopped. As she was turning to go upstairs, she felt a breeze on the back of her neck and realised the living room window was open; Samantha was about to close the window when she realised the catch had been broken. That's when she knew somebody had been in the house. She ran to call the police. Within minutes they had arrived, and caught somebody running across a neighbouring field.

Their house has been burgled, but the criminal was caught and taken to courts. She was very relieved to hear that he was going to be put in prison.

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 2 (p. 37)****(Suggested answers)**

- 2 **promise** – She promised to bring the money she owed me the next day.
- 3 **threaten** – She threatened to sack him if he didn't work harder.
- 4 **allow** – He allowed her to use his phone whenever she wanted.
- 5 **beg** – He begged her to go with him.
- 6 **remind** – He reminded her to check the papers.
- 7 **accuse** – He accused him of vandalising the school gym.
- 8 **apologise** – She apologised for damaging his car.
- 9 **deny** – He denied starting the fight.
- 10 **suggest** – He suggested going to Paris that summer.
- 11 **invite** – He invited her to his party on Saturday.
- 12 **warn** – He warned me not to go near the fire because I would burn myself.

Part 3➤ **Warm-up Activities: Part 3 (p. 38)****(Suggested answer)**

- I think the trees in the picture are olive trees. Olive oil is produced by pressing olives. It is then used in

cooking and salads. It is mostly consumed in Mediterranean countries. Recent research has shown that olive oil is considered a 'healthy food'. Countries that consume a lot of olive oil have lower rates of heart disease and longer life expectancy.

(Suggested answer)

- I think seasonal vegetables and fruit are healthy to eat. I also think that dairy products are healthy to eat, but they shouldn't be consumed in large quantities. To help us live longer we should live in pollution-free environments, exercise regularly, eat healthily and learn to relax more.

- a T b F c T d F

➤ **Reading Task: Part 3 (pp. 38 - 39)**

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 14 A | 16 F | 18 B | 20 D |
| 15 H | 17 E | 19 I | |

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 3 (pp. 40 - 41)**

- 1 varied** – not all the same
calories – unit for measuring the amount of energy in food
lactose – a type of sugar found in milk
patterns – general trends
rates – how fast and how often sth happens
puzzle – mystery
concerns – has to do with
carpenter – person who works with wood
dessert – sweet food eaten at the end of a meal
walnuts – type of nut
formula – particular method/way of doing sth
moderate – not extreme
fatty acid – essential chemical component of fat

- 2**

1 consume	4 individual	7 average
2 overcome	5 process	8 ingredient
3 resist	6 vital	

- 3**

1 last/past	6 so	11 case
2 which	7 though/if	12 been
3 most	8 from	13 from
4 taking	9 enough	14 any
5 can/could/does	10 be	15 there

Factors

- regular exercise
- avoid drinking and smoking
- leading a stress free life
- have a balanced diet

4 (Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- | | | |
|-----------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 high | 4 heart | 7 hardly |
| 2 to live | 5 to overcome | 8 the effects |
| 3 whether | 6 to take | 9 confirms |

5 1 back up 2 show up 3 tie up 4 use up

6 (Ss do Ex. 6 then T explains/elicits the meaning of each distractor.)

- 1 B 2 D 3 A 4 B

- 1 **study** (n) – work for a set subject
research (n) – act of gathering information for a project
report (n) – written account of sth
examination (n) – test
- 2 **think** (v) – to organise information in your head
regard as (v) – consider
assume (v) – to guess sth from previous facts
consider (v) – to decide whether or not to do sth
- 3 **confirm** (v) – to make sure about
affirm (v) – to state that sth is true
assure (v) – to tell sb that sth is right
testify (v) – to give evidence in court
- 4 **show** (v) – to make sth clear
indicate (v) – to show that sth will happen
clarify (v) – to explain
prove (v) – to give evidence about sth

7 1 off 5 out 9 behind
 2 through 6 for 10 out with
 3 over 7 in with
 4 to 8 on

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 3 (p. 41)**

(Suggested answers)

- **Good for you** – walnuts; drinking wine with a meal; yoghurt; cheese; vegetables; honey; fruit; olive oil; salads
Bad for you – smoking; drinking wine in between meals; full-fat milk; butter
- **You had better** stop smoking; **What about** taking some light exercise?; **How about** drinking wine with your meals only?; **What if** you started cooking with olive oil instead of with butter?; **Shouldn't you** consider including more fruit and vegetables in your diet?; **You could** eat yoghurt with honey and walnuts as an alternative to ice-cream and cakes.; **Why don't you** start drinking skimmed milk instead of full-fat variety?

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 3 (p. 41)**

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 Despite | 6 though |
| 2 In spite of the fact that | 7 However |
| 3 although | 8 No matter how |
| 4 yet | 9 yet |
| 5 even though | 10 but |

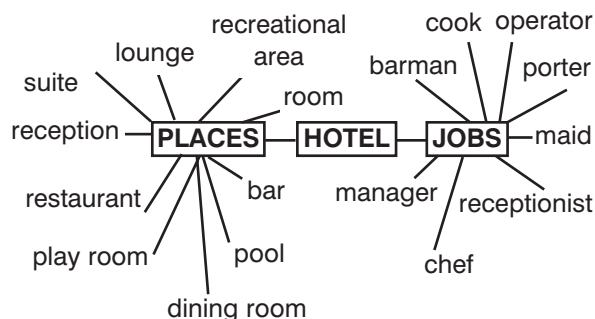
Part 4

➤ **Warm-up Activities: Part 4 (p. 42)**

(Suggested answers)

- They were taken in and outside hotels. The first picture shows an average hotel whereas the second one shows the interior of a rather expensive hotel. I think the first hotel offers basic facilities while the second hotel offers luxurious ones.
- **Famous Hotels** – The Ritz, The Rochester, The Beverly Wiltshire, The Dorchester, The Hilton.
People working in hotels – receptionist, doorman, porter, chambermaid, chef, waitress, bell-boy, manager.
- I prefer luxurious hotels because I have expensive tastes. It's a nice break from one's daily routine. If I were to stay in a hotel in England for a week, I'd choose a friendly hotel because it would be cheaper so I could spend most of my money visiting museums and seeing the sights.

(T draws the following spidergram on the board and elicits from Ss names of jobs related to a hotel.)



- a) There's no charge at all.
- b) Long term hotels – because there are no proper fire escapes and they are located in an area notorious for crime.
- c) Because they are small and friendly.
- d) It is situated in the heart of London.

➤ **Reading Task: Part 4 (pp. 42 - 43)**

21/22	A, B in any order	30/31	B, D in any order
23/24	A, D in any order		
25	E	32	E
26	C	33	D
27	A	34	C
28	C	35	D
29	C		

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 4 (p. 20)**

- 1**
- | | |
|-------------|------------------|
| 1 long term | 6 on a budget |
| 2 casual | 7 discreet |
| 3 uniform | 8 impressive |
| 4 suite | 9 complex |
| 5 notorious | 10 accommodation |

2 (*Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.*)

- | | |
|-------------|-------------------|
| 1 to run | 6 reasonably |
| 2 centrally | 7 extra |
| 3 fairly | 8 comfortably |
| 4 fire | 9 a fully-stocked |
| 5 a common | |

- 3**
- | | |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| 1 high-class | 6 tip |
| 2 chambermaid | 7 reservation |
| 3 lobby | 8 continental breakfast |
| 4 porter | 9 room service |
| 5 check in | 10 air-conditioned |

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 4 (p. 44)****(Suggested answers)**

- Advantages – Excellent sports facilities
– The rooms are for single people – no ‘single supplement’ and therefore good for single travellers
– comfortably furnished rooms with their own bathroom
– safe
– centrally located
– easy to meet people
– long term – you can stay for months or even years
– for both men and women
- I would choose to stay at the **Dorchester Hotel** because the services they provide are the best available. The staff have to wear a uniform and are trained to be very discreet and professional. Everything is done in a very correct but friendly way and I could depend on everything being

spotlessly clean and in good working order. The fact that I could relax in my room watching television or enjoying a drink is very attractive to me as I like my privacy. It may be a high-class hotel but I don't mind playing because the service is so good.

I wouldn't like to stay in one of the long term hotels in King's Cross. As it is now an area notorious for crime rather than an area with cheap hotels for tourists, I would feel very unsafe there. The accommodation is cheap but also dirty, damp and dangerous. Drug dealing is a common feature and the hotels rarely have fire escapes. Altogether it sounds like a dangerous place, and I would never choose to stay there.

Exam Focus – Use of English (p. 45)

(**Part 4** is a text containing errors. Some lines are correct whereas others contain an extra and unnecessary word which must be identified. Ss should read through the text to get an understanding of its general meaning. Then Ss read the text again carefully line by line to identify the unnecessary word (e.g. article, participle, conjunction, preposition, tense, etc.). Ss tick any correct lines and write the unnecessary words in the corresponding space. Ss read the text once more to see if their answers are correct.)

➤ **Part 4**

1 The	5 for	9 been	13 ✓
2 ✓	6 as	10 up	14 most
3 called	7 ✓	11 ✓	15 the
4 ✓	8 with	12 on	

(**Part 5** is a text containing ten gaps, each one corresponding to a word. The roots of the missing words are given beside the text and must be transformed to provide the missing word. Ss read through the text to get an understanding of its general meaning. Then Ss read the text and the given words again to determine the missing word. Ss read once more to check if their answers make sense and are spelled correctly.)

➤ **Part 5**

1 generally	6 reservation
2 luxurious	7 manager
3 accommodation	8 consideration
4 expensive	9 possibly
5 services	10 central

➤ Prepositions

1 for	7 of	13 for	19 at
2 of	8 in	14 at	20 of
3 on	9 at	15 of	21 on
4 in, of	10 in	16 with	22 for
5 on	11 in	17 at	23 in/of
6 at	12 with	18 for/at	

Exam Focus — Listening (Part 2) (p. 46)

(Part 2 is a monologue or text involving interacting speakers. It lasts about 3 minutes. Ss listen the first time and fill in any gaps they can. Ss listen again filling in the rest and checking their answers if they make sense.)

- 9 Dunn
- 10 Help Out
- 11 help homeless youth
- 12 over 5 years
- 13 2 years ago
- 14 personal experience/involvement with friend
- 15 fund-raising/making money
- 16 events/concerts and dances
- 17 telephone message line, Help Out House/
Shelter for homeless youth
- 18 degree in business

Part 2

You will hear a girl being interviewed about her involvement in a local charity. For questions 9 to 18, fill in the journalist's notepad.

Journalist: As you know, Ms Dunn, we're running a series of articles on young people's involvement in local life, and we know you're very active in a group called, er...

Dunn: It's called Help Out, actually. We try to help young people who haven't got proper homes – you know, runaways and people who have no families and that. But it's mainly for those under eighteen.

Journalist: So it's to help homeless youth? And how long has the group existed?

Dunn: It was founded in – er – well, it's over five years, anyway.

Journalist: Right. And how long have you been involved?

Dunn: Only about 2 years – not quite 2 years.

Journalist: Okay, fine. Now, what exactly made you decide to volunteer – er, to join this group?

Dunn: Well, it's sort of a long story. You see, this friend of mine ran away from home and, er – well, it was all a misunderstanding, really, but she was too proud to go back. Anyway, when she'd been gone

for about 3 weeks she contacted me, and I went to see her in this ... well, squat I suppose, but it was disgusting, freezing cold and filthy, and I convinced her to get in touch with her parents. It all worked out all right, and I saw you could do something to help people in that situation, so I joined.

Journalist: So it was, er, a personal experience that prompted you?

Dunn: Right, yes.

Journalist: And what exactly do you do for the group?

Dunn: Lots of different things, really – but mainly I do fund-raising, er, making money for the group.

Journalist: Which brings me to my next question – how do you raise money?

Dunn: Mainly we put on events – not sales and things so much, but concerts and dances mainly – things that interest young people.

Journalist: I see. Now, are there any particular projects the group is involved in at the moment? Anything you're in the process of developing?

Dunn: Actually, yes. One thing is, er, a telephone service that helps young people get in touch with their families, and the other way round, of course. It's a kind of telephone message service really. And then there's the house – Help Out House, it's called – which will provide shelter for homeless young people. That's in the early stages – we haven't even got a building yet – but I think it'll be really good once it gets going.

Journalist: Right. And one last question. What are your plans for the future? Not the group's, I mean, but your own personal plans?

Dunn: Well, I'm about to start a degree in business administration. I want it so I can be more useful in helping run groups like Help Out. I can't see myself becoming a sort of high-powered businessperson. I want to keep doing this sort of work, and I think the degree will be helpful – so that's my plan.

Journalist: Thank you, Ms Dunn. I wish you and your organisation all the best for the future.

Dunn: Thanks.

Exam Focus — Speaking (p. 47)

➤ Part 3

(In Part 3 Ss are examined in pairs. They are given visual prompts which generate a discussion and they talk with one another. Ss look carefully at the visual prompts concentrating on relevant details. The conversation should not be dominated by one student. Ss have to talk only about the task the interviewer has given them. This part lasts about 3 minutes.)

(Suggested answer)

SA: I'd get all the money and jewellery from the safe and run towards the fire exit and leave the house. I'd be too scared to face the burglar.

SB: I'd open the window and shout for help.

SA: But isn't it too dangerous? I mean he would definitely hear you and possibly attack you.

SB: Then I'd use my rifle and face him. The rifle would deter him from attacking me and he would run away.

SA: That's a good idea, but I couldn't do it. I would try to call the police and ask for help etc.

➤ **Part 4**

(In Part 4 the interviewer asks Ss questions about matters related to the theme of Part 3. The Ss are either asked different questions in turn or may be asked the same question. Part 4 lasts about 4 minutes.)

(Suggested answers)

- **SA:** I'd have an alarm system installed, which would deter burglars from breaking in.
SB: That's a good idea. And I'd make sure to bolt all windows and doors when I left the house so that they couldn't get in.
- **SA:** Yes, neighbourhood watch schemes are a good idea and do work because there is always someone to keep an eye on your house when you're not there.
SB: These schemes are useful for when you go on holiday because your property is being looked after and you can enjoy your holiday.
- **SA:** Well, the area I live in is patrolled by policemen all day round. This is because there are many banks in the area.
SB: You are lucky. I can't say the same for my area because I live in the suburbs. Of course, most houses have alarm systems installed, but burglars are still tempted to try breaking in.
- **SA:** I'd try to leave the house without being noticed by the burglar and I'd run to the nearest police station.
SB: I'd pick up my gun and attack the burglar. After all, it is my property, isn't it?

Exam Focus – Writing (p. 48)

[Special attention should be drawn to the layout of the addresses and the use of commas and full stops: name, title, place or work, number of street, name of street, town, country, day, month and year. If the recipient lives in the same country as the person who is sending the letter, then we write only the name of the town the person lives in (see outlines 2 and 3 p. 48 Student's Book). If the recipient however, lives in another country, then the names of the two countries should appear in the addresses (see outline 1 p. 48 Student's Book). We always leave one line blank after the address before we start writing Dear

If you write to a friend of yours, or to your **brother/sister/cousin/niece**, you address him/her using **Dear and his/her name** e.g. Dear Tom, not: Dear Friend, Dear Mary not: Dear Sister or Dear Sister Mary). If you write to an **aunt/uncle of yours**, you address him/her using **Dear + kind of relation + name** e.g. Dear Uncle Tom not: Dear Uncle. If you write to your **mum, dad, grandpa or grandma**, you write **Dear + kind of relation** (e.g. Dear Mum, Dear Grandma not: Dear Mum Mary, Dear Grandma Ann). In formal letters if you know the name of the recipient (see Model 1 p. 49 in Student's Book) you sign using **Yours sincerely** and your full name. If you don't know the name of the recipient though, you sign using **Yours faithfully** and your full name (see Model 1 p. 53 in Student's Book).]

1	1 I	5 I	9 F	13 I	17 F
	2 F	6 I	10 I	14 I	18 F
	3 F	7 F	11 F	15 I	19 I
	4 I	8 F	12 F	16 F	20 I

(Note: stress that **I look forward to** is formal language whereas **I'm looking forward to** is informal language).

2	1 Model 1	4 Model 1	7 Model 2
	2 Model 1	5 Model 2	8 Model 2
	3 Model 2	6 Model 1	9 Model 2

- 3** Dear Sir/Madam,
- B** –reason for writing – mild (to state the problem)
 - D** –first complaint – strong (to show you are not satisfied)
 - C** –second complaint – strong (to show you are not satisfied)
 - A** –demand for action – strong (to emphasise what you want)

Yours faithfully,
James Aarons

4 Informal (A)

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1 I want to tell you | 6 let |
| 2 about | 7 get together |
| 3 say I'm sorry | 8 soon |
| 4 I want you to know | 9 friendly chat |
| 5 I was really upset | 10 say again |

Paragraph 1: Reason for writing

Paragraph 2: Apology (and explanation)

Paragraph 3: Suggest meeting

Paragraph 4: Apology repeated

Formal (B)

- 1 I am writing to
- 2 with regard to
- 3 apologise
- 4 I would like to express
- 5 I was most disappointed
- 6 allowed
- 7 meet
- 8 in the near future
- 9 amicable conversation
- 10 reiterate

Paragraph 1: reason for writing, apology

Paragraph 2: thanks for help

Paragraph 3: explanation for behaviour, suggest meeting

Paragraph 4: apology repeated

- | | | | | | |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 5 | 1 E | 3 A | 5 C | 7 I | 9 F |
| | 2 H | 4 D | 6 G | 8 B | |

Dear Mr Thompson,

Paragraph 1 = sentences E, H

Paragraphs 2, 3 = sentences A, D, C, G, I

Paragraph 4 = B, F

Yours faithfully,
J. Peters

- 6**
- 1 A (letter of application – formal) I wish to apply for the position of ..., I feel I am well qualified for the position of ... etc.
 - 2 D (letter of apology – formal) I deeply regret ..., I wish to offer my sincere apology for ... etc.
 - 3 B (friendly letter – catch up with the news – informal) How have you been ...; I haven't heard from you for ages ... etc.
 - 4 F (letter of congratulations – informal) I'm so pleased for you ..., Well done ... etc.
 - 5 C (letter of invitation – informal) I'd love to see you ..., Why don't you come ...? etc.
 - 6 H (letter of apology – formal) I regret ..., I wish to offer my apology for ... etc.
 - 7 G (letter giving advice – formal) I advise you to take the following course of action ..., I recommend that you ... etc.
 - 8 E (letter accepting an invitation – formal) I look forward to attending ..., we would be delighted to attend etc.

T is advised to go through the following tables to see the language used and the difference in formal and informal letter writing according to each type of letter. T can ask Ss to think of any opening and closing remarks for each type of letter before he does Ex. 6 or, after having done Ex. 6, feed Ss with more opening and closing remarks. Some useful opening and closing remarks for letters are:

Letters of invitation		
	Formal	Informal
Opening Remarks	We would be honoured if you, I wish to cordially invite you to, Your presence is required at, You are invited to attend, etc.	I'm writing to invite you to, Why don't you come and spend some time, Please come to, I'd love it if you could come to, etc.
Closing Remarks	We would be grateful if you could inform us, We hope to see you, Please indicate whether you will be able to attend, etc.	I'd love to see you again, I hope you'll be able to make it, Please let me know as soon as possible, I'm looking forward to, etc.
Accepting an invitation		
	Formal	Informal
Opening Remarks	I would be delighted to, I would be honoured to, I am writing to accept your kind invitation, etc.	I'd love to come, Thanks for the kind invitation, The party you invited me to sounds lovely, I'd be glad to, etc.
Closing Remarks	I will be attending, I look forward to seeing you, etc.	I can't wait to see you again, Until next Saturday then, etc.

Refusing an invitation		
	Formal	Informal
Opening Remarks	It will be impossible to attend, I am unable to fit it into my schedule, I am afraid I am unable to, I have to refuse, Owing to other commitments, etc.	I'm afraid I can't come, I'm sorry to tell you, I'd love to come but, I can't make it, I won't be able to come, etc.
Closing Remarks	I am sorry to miss the opportunity of, I hope to be given the opportunity to meet you some other time, etc.	It's a real shame, I hope we can get together some other time, I'm sorry to miss, How about next week instead, etc.

Asking for information		
	Formal	Informal
Opening Remarks	I am writing to ask/inquire about, Could you possibly send, May I request, I would be grateful if, Could you please send further details etc.	Can you send me, Tell me if, Let me know, etc.
Closing Remarks	I would appreciate it if you could inform me as soon as possible, I look forward to receiving, It would be of great help if you could fax me the details, etc.	Let me know, Tell me soon, Send me the details, etc.

Giving information		
	Formal	Informal
Opening Remarks	I am writing to inform you about, In reply to your query, The following information is what was requested, I am pleased to be able to assist you in your enquiries, etc.	After you asked me to, This is what I found out, I hope this is the information you were looking for, This is what you asked me about, etc.
Closing Remarks	I hope that I have been of some help to you, I trust that this is the information you require, Please inform me if I can be of any further assistance, etc.	I hope this will help you, Let me know if you need any more help finding out about, I'm glad I could help you, etc.

Letters giving directions		
	Formal	Informal
Opening Remarks	I have enclosed some directions and a map, I would be delighted if you could attend, and to ensure you can find your way I will write some detailed directions below, In case you do not know the exact location of the ... hotel/venue, I have included some directions, If you follow the directions below/map below ..., etc.	In case you don't know the way I'll give you some directions, Here are few directions, so you don't get lost, I'll tell you how to get there, This is just a quick note, to tell you how to get to..., I've written some directions, and drawn a map to help, etc.
Closing Remarks	I trust that you will find these directions helpful, I hope that you are able to follow the directions given, etc.	I hope the directions above are clear enough for you, I hope that you can find your way alright, Please pay special attention to the directions, My directions shouldn't be too difficult to follow, etc.

Application for a job	
Opening Remarks	I am writing with regard to your advertisement, I would like to apply for the post of,
Closing Remarks	I would appreciate a reply at your earliest convenience, I look forward to meeting you, Please contact me regarding any queries you may have, etc.

Letters of apology		
	Formal	Informal
Opening Remarks	Unfortunately I must apologise for ..., Please accept my sincerest apologies for ..., How can I apologise enough for ..., I must apologise profusely for ..., etc.	I hope you will understand when I say that, What can I say, except I'm sorry that ..., I certainly owe you an apology as I ..., I'm so sorry if I upset you in any way, I find it very hard to tell you that ...and I'm sorry for ..., I can't describe how sorry I am and how guilty I feel, etc.
Closing Remarks	I hope you can forgive me..., I implore you to accept my apologies..., Words cannot express how sorry I am, I hope you will accept my apologies, I hope my apologies were received without resentment, etc.	I hope you believe me when I say how sorry I am, I cannot express how much I regret ..., I beg you to forgive me for ..., There is no excuse for ... and I hope you'll accept my apology, etc.

Letters of complaint		
	Strong	Mild
Opening Remarks	I was disgusted by, I was appalled at, How dare you, I want to express my strong dissatisfaction, etc.	I am writing to complain, I had been led to expect, I would like to cancel the order/request, I have no other alternative, etc.
Closing Remarks	I am taking the matter to court, I intend to sue, I insist you replace the item at once, etc.	Nevertheless, I hope you will replace, I trust the situation will improve, I hope the matter will be resolved, etc.

Letters of advice		
	Formal	Informal
Opening Remarks	I strongly recommend that, I would suggest that, I believe the best course of action is, I would advise you to, etc.	If I were you, How about doing this, Why don't you, Let me give you some advice, etc.
Closing Remarks	I trust you will accept this advice, I hope this will be of help, I would very much like to know if this was helpful/has been of some use, etc.	Hope this helped, Let me know how it went, Is this of any use, etc.

- 7**
- 1 C – reason for writing
 - 2 A – description of event
 - 3 E – description of event
 - 4 B – description of event
 - 5 D – closing remarks

8 (Suggested answer)

a Informal – asking for advice

Dear Jane,

How are you? I'm fine, but I have a bit of a problem and I'd be grateful for some advice.

I'll be finishing school soon and I don't know what to do. I'm thinking of becoming a nurse like you ...

... Anyway, I hope you'll be able to help me make a decision. Write back soon and let me know what you think.

Love,
Julie

b Informal – letter of invitation

Dear Jane and Matthew,

How are you both? Hope you're well! I'm writing to invite you to a little get-together we're planning ...

We'd love to see you, so let us know if you'll be able to come.

Love,
Mike and Sarah

c Informal – accepting an invitation

Dear Mike and Sarah,

Thank you for your kind letter inviting us to your get-together ...

... Looking forward to seeing you on Saturday.

Love,
Jane and Matthew

d Informal – refusing an invitation

Dear Mike and Sarah,

Thank you so much for your letter inviting us to your get-together. However ...

... We're really sorry, but I hope we'll be able to meet some other time soon.

Love,
Jane and Matthew

e Informal – letter of thanks

Dear Katharine,

I hope you are well. You looked lovely at the wedding. We're writing to ...

... Once again, thank you very much for your thoughtfulness. We must get together again soon.

Love,
Mark and Jenny

f Formal – letter requesting information

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing to inquire about the French course that your school will be running next month ...

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,
Sarah Brown

9 Good – Model 1

- appropriate formal style and language
- well ordered paragraphs
- information requested in separate paragraphs – each has a topic
- information included using own words

Bad – Model 2

- inappropriate language – too informal
- badly structured
- information clustered together; lack of paragraphing
- not all information included

- 10** paragraph 1: reason for writing
 paragraph 2: giving information in order requested
 paragraph 3: giving information in order requested
 paragraph 4: giving information in order requested
 paragraph 5: conclusion of letter – closing remarks
 The letter is informal, giving information in reply to set questions.

11 (Suggested answer)

Dear Sam,

I am pleased to hear that you are planning to apply for a job as a waiter in the hotel where I worked last summer. Before you make up your mind, though, I feel you should know what the job is like.

The hotel itself is only 100m from the beach and is owned by Mr Legrand and his wife, who is English. She will be able to help you if you are having trouble with your French, especially since most of the tourists who stay there are French.

I worked from June to September but I'm sure that you could ask for a two month contract if you

prefer. The accommodation provided was very clean, but the only problem was that I had to share a room with another waiter, which I didn't like very much. I worked twelve hours a day, six days a week, which was quite tiring, and was paid 4000 fr (about £400) a month including tips.

All in all, working for the Legrands was an enjoyable experience, and I think you should go ahead and apply. Apart from anything else, it's a great opportunity to practise your French.

Please write and let me know what you decide to do.

Love,
Richard

the reunion because I will be on holiday for the whole of the month of June. Had I known about the reunion in advance I would have made other arrangements, but this is now impossible.

I still keep in touch with many of my former school friends and am really disappointed that I will miss the occasion. However, I'm sure the party will be a success and I would like to thank you for sending me an invitation.

Once again, I'm sorry to miss this year's reunion but I hope to be there next year.

Yours sincerely,
Catherine Smith

- 12**
- 1 B Formal letter of invitation e.g. We would be honoured if you could attend ..., You are cordially invited to ... etc.
 - 2 A Informal letter expressing thanks e.g. Thanks a lot for ..., I loved your present ... etc.
 - 3 D Formal letter of complaint e.g. I wish to express my dissatisfaction at ..., I am most unhappy with ... etc.
 - 4 E Informal letter giving advice e.g. What I think you should do is ..., Let me tell you what I would do ... etc.
 - 5 C Formal letter asking for information e.g. I am writing to enquire about ..., I would be grateful if you could send me ... etc.

13 (Suggested answers)

1 Formal – request

Dear Sir,

My name is James Walters and I stayed in your hotel on the weekend of 22/23 March this year.

During my stay I lost my camera and I believe it is possible that I left it in my room.

The camera is a large, black Canon, a 23x zoom lens model.

I would be very grateful if you could look out for it and send it to the address above if you find it. I will, of course, be happy to pay for any postage costs.

The service at your hotel was excellent and I hope you can help me with this problem. I thank you in advance for your co-operation and look forward to hearing from you in the near future.

Yours faithfully,
James Walters

2 Semi-formal – expressing regret

Dear Mrs Potter,

I have just received your letter informing me of the school reunion on June 24th.

I am sorry to say that I will be unable to attend

3 Informal – letter of apology

Dear Jack,

I'm writing to say sorry for keeping you waiting at the station last weekend. When I missed the train I was so upset I completely forgot to phone you at once to let you know. By the time I phoned you had already left for the station. I want to apologise for being so thoughtless, I promise you it won't happen again.

I still feel rotten for not contacting you, so to make up, I'd like to invite you to my house for the Easter weekend. We're having a big party and lots of old friends will be there. I hope you can make it.

I'm sure we can still be friends and I hope that we can see each other again. It would be silly to fall out over my own stupidity. Please give my regards to your family and write back soon.

Love,
Victoria

4 Formal – letter of complaint

Dear Sir/Madam,

I was a customer, along with several friends, at your restaurant last week, and am writing to complain about the treatment we received.

The manager was extremely rude to us from the moment we entered the restaurant, and we had to wait almost half an hour for a table, although we had booked one.

Having ordered our food, we were kept waiting almost an hour. When it finally arrived it was so badly cooked that we had to send it back. No apology was offered for the appalling food, and we thus decided to leave the restaurant without re-ordering.

This incident ruined our evening, and I am writing in the hope that some action will be taken against the staff of your restaurant.

Yours faithfully,
Peter Brown

5 Formal – asking for information

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing with regard to the guided tours of London that you offer. I would be very grateful if you could send me some detailed information about the tours and which areas of London they cover, as well as times of departure for each tour.

I have an Italian friend visiting the U.K. this summer and he is very interested in art and history. Do you have any tours which include visits to galleries or museums? My friend is a student so I would be interested in details of any discounts that are available and also the full price of each tour.

I thank you in advance for your co-operation and look forward to receiving your reply in the near future.

Yours faithfully,
Sam Jones

6 Informal – giving advice

Dear Sarah,

Thank you for your letter, which I have just received. I'm sorry to hear about your job dilemma, and I'm glad that you asked me for help with it.

My advice is very simple; you need to find a job quickly, no matter how bad the pay is, otherwise there's a danger that you may be evicted from your flat. You should concentrate on earning some money quickly, not on getting a good job at the moment. Once you have some money in your pocket, you can start looking for a job that's right for you. If you can't find anything, let me know immediately and I'll lend you some money to get by on.

I hope that my advice will help. Write back if you need any more and I'll be happy to help! In the meantime, good luck.

Love,
Joanna

Unit 3

Part 1

➤ Warm-up Activities: Part 1 (p. 56)

(Suggested answers)

- The photos could have been taken somewhere in Eastern Europe, such as Hungary. I would like to visit the place in the photos because it looks interesting and probably doesn't have many tourists.
- Interesting sights, friendly people, exciting night life etc.

- Tourism can benefit a country by encouraging people to visit and spend money, which improves the local economy. More jobs are created for inhabitants of the country, and facilities are improved. The possible drawbacks of tourism are that it may result in areas becoming over-crowded and polluted. Some resorts lose all their character and charm as hotels are built to accommodate increasing numbers of tourists.

- | | | |
|------------|------------|------------------|
| 1 £1.15 | 4 city | 7 wildlife |
| 2 director | 5 Austrian | 8 transportation |
| 3 Golden | 6 theatre | 9 facilities |

(After Ss have completed the listening activity, T asks Ss to give a summary of the text using the text.)

➤ Reading Task: Part 1 (pp. 56 - 57)

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 I | 3 G | 5 H | 7 B |
| 2 A | 4 C | 6 D | |

➤ Vocabulary Exercises: Part 1 (pp. 58 - 59)

- prosperity** – state of economic well-being
accounted for – made up (a part of sth)
foreign exchange – money in a foreign currency
optimistic – expecting the best in all things
pouring – providing in large quantities
to expand – to become or make greater in size, number of importance
landscapes – all the features of an area that can be seen when looking across it
investment – money to buy shares or property, develop a business, etc., in order to earn interest, bring profit or improve the quality of something
spread – to distribute over a wider area
concentration – large amount of sth in a small or defined area
sewage system – network of underground pipes used to transport waste water to treatment centres
hiking – going on a long walk, especially in the country

- 2** 1 exclusive 4 convention 7 options
 2 boom 5 prospects 8 wandering
 3 bid 6 influx

3 (Ss should memorise these text-related collocations and expressions. T checks them in the next lesson.)

- | | | |
|----------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1 to preserve | 4 culture | 7 to explore |
| 2 to encourage | 5 unspoilt | 8 rich |
| 3 to lessen | 6 to become | 9 to restore |

- 4** 1 sight 3 loss 5 stimulated
2 demolish 4 vacant 6 margin

- 5** (T can go through the list of words and elicit their meaning before Ss do Ex. 5.)

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1 bank | 7 exchange rates |
| 2 change | 8 cash |
| 3 currency | 9 traveller's cheques |
| 4 notes | 10 cash car |
| 5 coins | 11 withdraw |
| 6 credit card | |

- 6 A** 1 on good terms with
2 on equal terms
3 in terms of
4 on unequal terms with

- B** 1 come to terms with 2 in the long term

- 7** (Ex. 7 should be assigned as HW. Ss should consult their dictionaries in order to find the missing idioms. T should do the first two in class as a model.)

- A** 1 at first sight 5 lost sight of
2 within sight 6 his/her sights on
3 out of sight 7 out of sight out of mind
4 caught sight of 8 by sight

- 8** 1 **renovate** – (Note: renovate old buildings; return them to good condition)
2 **restore** – (Note: restore an old painting, a statue, a car etc; to repair or rebuild sth so that it looks as it originally did)
3 **repair** – (Note: to mend something that is broken or damaged)
4 **preserve** – to keep something in its original state or in good condition

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 1 (p. 59)**

Prague – shopping, eating in restaurants/cafes, enjoy beautiful architecture

Cesky Krumlov – visit castles, see the oldest baroque theatre in the world complete with stage sets, costumes and a library of opera *libretti*

Sumava – wildlife, unspoilt nature

(Suggested answers)

- In Scotland, a tourist could visit Loch Ness and enjoy the beautiful scenery as well as trying to spot the famed Loch Ness monster. They could also go to Stirling and visit the castle and the William Wallace monument. In Glasgow, the Art Gallery would be of interest for the famous Impressionist paintings kept there.

(Suggested answer)

(Ss work in pairs. T checks round the class then asks some pairs to report back to the class.)

- SA:** I would love to visit New York City and go to the top of the Empire State Building. It's no longer the tallest building in the world but it's certainly one of the most impressive.

SB: Personally I'd like to visit the Acropolis in Athens as I'm very interested in ancient history.

SA: Not me, I love the hustle and bustle of big cities. Tokyo must be exhilarating. I'd also enjoy the food there.

SB: Well, I'm hoping to go to Paris this summer. There is so much to see there: Notre Dame, the Eiffel Tower, the Louvre. I'm sure it will be a fascinating holiday.

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 1 (p. 59)**

- | | | | |
|---------|-------|---------|---------|
| 1 since | 3 for | 5 Since | 7 Since |
| 2 for | 4 for | 6 for | |

Part 2

➤ **Warm-up Activities: Part 2 (p. 60)**

(Suggested answers)

- The photos could have been taken at some kind of festival or celebration. These people could be celebrating the arrival of spring or their country's national day etc. Their clothes are traditional and old-fashioned rather than modern.

(Suggested answers)

- Well, there's the May Day festival when people go into the countryside or they go to a fair with traditional dancing. The other main celebration is Guy Fawkes Night when it's customary to light a bonfire and let off fireworks.
- a about 10,000
b five years old
c baskets, furniture, walking sticks
d a massive cookbook of inventive recipes
e cheese, mashed potatoes, cream, butter, garlic

➤ **Reading Task: Part 2 (pp. 60 - 61)**

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 8 B (Ln 7) | 12 A (Ln 22 - 23) |
| 9 C (Ln 10 -11) | 13 B (Ln 30 - 31) |
| 10 C (Ln 15 - 16) | 14 D (Ln 37) |
| 11 A (Ln 19 - 20) | 15 C (Ln 40 - 41) |

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 2 (pp. 62 - 63)**

- 1 a blessing in disguise** – something that seems bad, but is actually good
judgement – decision
chestnut – a kind of edible nut
soaked – extremely wet all the way through
highlights – the best parts
panel – committee; group of people who make a decision about sth
region – area
jog – slow run
partly – not entirely
sampled – tried
mouthfuls – bites of sth
puree – sth mixed or processed until it is creamy
texture – consistency – e.g. ‘It had a creamy texture.’
jollier – happier
stirred – mixed
paddles – oars used for rowing a boat

- 2** 1 fragrant 4 mashed 7 massive
 2 literally 5 recipe 8 vigorously
 3 downpour 6 incorporating

- 3** (*Ss should memorise these text-related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.*)

- 1 traffic 4 to stare 7 to consist
 2 to own 5 to make 8 original
 3 to sample* 6 to stir 9 running off

(*Note: we can say **to sample dishes** but not: to sample recipes)

- 5** (*Ss do Ex. 5 on their own then T elicits/explains the meanings of each distractor.*)

- 1 A 2 C 3 A 4 D 5 B 6 B
- 1 A **lane** (n) = narrow roads usu in the country
 B **way** (n) = direction; route
 C **alley** (n) = narrow street, usu between or behind buildings
 D **route** (n) = way from one place to another
- 2 A **rotten** (adj) = (of food) spoiled; no longer edible
 B **sweet** (adj) = tasting of sugar
 C **bitter** (adj) = having a harsh, unpleasant taste
 D **sour** (adj) = having a sharp taste like lemon
- 3 A **harsh** (adj) = (of weather conditions) severe
 B **cruel** (adj) = unkind
 C **strict** (adj) = firm; unaccepting
 D **stern** (adj) = grim and serious
- 4 A **go for a spin** (exp) = to go for a drive for pleasure

- 5 A **moisten** (v) = to make slightly wet
 B **soak** (v) = to make extremely wet
 C **damp** (v) = to make slightly wet
 D **dampen** (v) = to make slightly wet
- 6 A **recipe** (n) = instructions for preparing a particular type of food
 B **prescription** (n) = piece of paper on which a doctor writes the name of a medication to be obtained by the patient
 C **receipt** (n) = piece of paper given to one stating how much one has paid for sth
 D **formula** (n) = list of substances to be mixed to make another substance

- 6 WEATHER** – cloudy; windy; rainy; humid; freezing; sunny; blustery; roasting
ATMOSPHERE – jolly; light-hearted; noisy; frivolous; tense; playful; exhilarating; cheerful; colourful; nervous; anxious

7 (Suggested answers)

- SCHOOL FAIR** – races for parents and children; dancing; music; stalls selling home-made jams
FUN FAIR – fortune tellers; rides on a big wheel; clowns performing; stands selling hot-dogs
WINE FAIR – wine tasting; selling of wine; bar
VILLAGE FAIR – races for parents and children; donkey rides; pottery sales; dancing; fireworks display; music; bar; stalls selling home-made jams
ANTIQUES FAIR – auctions; pottery sales; old furniture; old coins; stamp collections; old jewellery

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 2 (p. 63)**

- **Weather** – rainy day, almost uninterrupted rain, sunny, downpour, pouring down
Atmosphere – curiosity, watched calmly, deeply frustrated, stared in amazement, jollier atmosphere, cheers
 Suggested title: A Country Fair
- **Weather** – pouring with rain, sunny, uninterrupted
Food for sale – chestnut cakes, mashed chestnut, cheese and bacon sandwiches, aligot
Events – cookery competition, Aligot evening, dance

(Suggested answers)

Well the fair was really nice, except for the weather. You see, it was pouring with rain all day long. Anyway, the villagers were prepared to have a fabulous day. There was plenty of food: chestnut cakes, mashed chestnuts, cheese and bacon sandwiches. There was a cookery competition. The

judges sampled seven dishes before they made their decision. Then the villagers tasted aligot (a local dish) and after that it was time for the dance. It was really a most enjoyable evening.

• **(Suggested answers)**

Dear Jane,

Remember the fund-raising fair my tennis club was going to hold? Well, it was a tremendous success.

Hundreds of people turned up – due to the beautiful weather I'm sure – and because it was a Saturday afternoon they didn't mind staying all day. We worked very hard to make the tennis club look attractive, using flags, putting up tents and marquees, and tying balloons and streamers everywhere.

John had the fabulous idea of hiring a 'bouncy castle' for the children and it proved to be very successful. The home-baking stall was laden with cakes, biscuits and sweets and there were lots of games, competitions too, as well as races and face-painting for the children. All in all, it was a very successful day. I forgot to tell you – I won a new tennis racquet in the raffle.

Next year you'll have to come with me. I had such a good time.

Write soon,
Carol

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 2 (p. 63)**

- | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------|
| 1 quite, rather | 4 rather | 7 rather |
| 2 quite, rather | 5 rather | 8 rather |
| 3 quite | 6 fairly/pretty | |

Part 3

➤ **Warm-up Activities: Part 3 (p. 64)**

(Suggested answers)

- I think the text is going to be about rain/the weather/bad weather etc.
- Snow, hail, sleet, rain, sunshine, cloudy, cold, hot, warm, freezing etc. (*If Ss have difficulty T helps them by giving words related to weather and explaining their meaning.*)

My favourite type of weather is when it is warm and sunny. You can find out what the weather will be like listening to the forecast on the radio or watching it on the television. You can also phone the Meteorological Office for a detailed weather forecast.

- Sailor, pilot, air-traffic controller, gardener, fisherman etc. National Rivers Authority, police, highway authorities, airports, supermarkets, gas and fuel industries.

➤ **Reading Task: Part 3 (pp. 64 - 65)**

16 G 17 A 18 H 19 E 20 B 21 D

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 3 (pp. 66 - 67)**

- 1 observations** – studies; points made about sth
damp – slightly wet
misty – having a thin fog produced by very small drops of water formed just above the ground or water
comparative – relative; compared to sth else
unpredictability – inability to tell what will happen to sth next
regional – in a certain area
forecasters – people who predict what the weather will be like
power generators – machines that produce electricity
dictate – control
demand – amount needed
capacity – amount that sth can hold
range – variety
inputs – pieces of information put into a computer
satellites – flying objects which send information from space
wireless operators – people in charge of communication by radio
flow – rate or pattern of the movement of sth e.g. flow of traffic
seaboard – coast; area by the sea
accurate – precise; exact

- 2** 1 intrigued 5 coastal
 2 controversial 6 resort to
 3 insight 7 orbiting
 4 offshore 8 eavesdropping

- 3** 1 weather-beaten 4 weather the storm
 2 in all weathers 5 under the weather
 3 weather permitting

- 4** 1 opposite 3 decision 5 assume
 2 guide 4 joyful 6 correct

- 5** (*Ss do Ex. 5 on their own, then T elicits/explains the meanings of each distractor.*)

1 A 2 C 3 A 4 B 5 C 6 D

- 1 A **capacity** (n) = amount of sth, usu people, that sth can hold
 B **mass** (n) = amount of solid substance in sth
 C **volume** (n) = amount of space sth contains
 D **capability** (n) = ability to do sth
- 2 A **exact** (adj) = absolutely precise
 B **sharp** (adj) = pointed; clever
 C **accurate** (adj) = correct to a specific level (e.g. accurate weather forecast, accurate lab instruments)
 D **fine** (adj) = good
- 3 A **prediction** (n) = statement about what will happen in the future
 B **forecast** (n) = statement about future events, particularly the weather
 C **foresight** (n) = ability to plan ahead
 D **guess** (n) = very uncertain prediction
- 4 A **weighty** (adj) = heavy; serious
 B **significant** (adj) = having an important effect on sb/sth
 C **extreme** (adj) = more than expected; exaggerated
 D **basic** (adj) = simple
- 5 A **direction** (n) = movement towards sth
 B **guidance** (n) = act of telling sb how to behave, what to do etc.
 C **influence** (n) = power to determine the way sb thinks/behaves
 D **manipulation** (n) = act of using or changing sb or sth for selfish reasons
- 6 A **understand** (v) = to know the reason for sth
 B **realise** (v) = to become aware of sth
 C **comprehend** (v) = understand
 D **perceive** (v) = to have/get an impression of sth/sb

6 (Ss should memorise these text-related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- | | | |
|------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1 orbiting | 4 a populated | 7 to take |
| 2 showed | 5 the flow | 8 a high profile |
| 3 a wide | 6 power | 9 local |

7 **Good weather** – hot, sunshine, bright, cloudless sky, gentle wind, sunny, blue sky, warm breeze
Bad weather – gloomy, damp, windy, lightning, stormy, snowy, dark sky, cloudy, overcast

8 (Ss should memorise these expressions. T checks in the next lesson. This can be done as a competition game e.g.: T. drizzle

Group AS1: fine drizzle

T. hurricane

Group BS1: powerful hurricane, etc.

- | | | |
|----------|------------|----------------|
| 1 fine | 5 freezing | 9 powerful |
| 2 heavy | 6 violent | 10 destructive |
| 3 sudden | 7 thick | 11 heavy |
| 4 brief | 8 loud | 12 light |

9 (T should elicit/explain the highlighted words before Ss do Ex. 9. T also explains that **AA** stands for Automobile Association.)

- | | | | |
|---------------|-----------|-------|---------|
| 1 sunshine | 3 showers | 5 fog | 7 sleet |
| 2 temperature | 4 sunny | 6 ice | 8 snow |

➤ Follow-up Activities: Part 3 (p. 67)

(Suggested answer)

- Often people feel depressed when the weather is bad. If the sky is grey and gloomy and it's cold, you may be stopped from going out and doing something you've been planning for a long time. Some people say that if you see cows lying at the top of a hill, it will be a good day. There is a saying – 'Red sky at night - shepherd's delight
Red sky in the morning - shepherd's warning'

which means that if there's a beautiful sunset, the weather the next day will be good. If, however, the sky is red at sunrise, you can expect bad weather soon.

- (T is advised to do this activity in class. T should elicit relevant vocabulary from Ss and write it on the board e.g. temperature, drop, thick fog, heavy rain, snow, strong wind, thunderstorms etc. and useful expressions such as: a good start to the day, the weather takes a turn for ..., fog spreads, temperatures continue to drop etc. Then Ss work in pairs to write the weather forecast while T helps them if necessary. Then, each pair reads aloud their forecast. T can read the 'Suggested Answer' in class for Ss to see the style in this type of writing).

(Suggested answer)

Good morning, I'm Sylvia Davis. After a good start to the day the weather is going to take a turn for the worse. Temperatures will drop from 4°C to a cold -2°C in the north and a thick fog will spread across border regions in the late afternoon – so drivers beware! Showers are expected in all regions during the night with heavier rain in the Highlands and a possibility of snow in the north. The bad weather will continue tomorrow with strong winds and thunderstorms in the north and Highlands. Temperatures will continue to drop to -3°C in the south so wrap up warmly and have a good weekend.

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 3 (p. 67)**

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1 used to | 6 used to/would |
| 2 used to | 7 get used to |
| 3 are used to | 8 get used to |
| 4 get used to | 9 used to |
| 5 get used to | 10 would/used to |

Part 4➤ **Warm-up Activities: Part 4 (p. 68)****(Suggested answer)**

I think that invention A is a coathanger that has a space for hiding money in.

Invention B is a new kind of toothpaste that whitens teeth.

Invention C is a broom that cleans very thoroughly.

Invention D is a mini gold set that can be used anywhere.

Invention E is an oven that stirs the food while it is cooking.

- a F b T c F d F e F

➤ **Reading Task: Part 4 (pp. 68 - 69)**

- | | | |
|------|------|-------------------------|
| 22 E | 26 C | 30 A |
| 23 C | 27 D | 31 B |
| 24 A | 28 E | 32/33 C, D in any order |
| 25 B | 29 D | 34/35 C, D in any order |

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 4 (p. 20)**

- 1** 1 portable 3 ingenious 5 suspended from
2 raked 4 to swing 6 moulded

- (Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- 2** 1 to hang up 9 to last
2 to take 10 to indicate
3 to whiten 11 lifetime
4 the effect 12 to stir
5 to comply with 13 scrambled
6 to cope with 14 to eliminate
7 durable 15 to reduce
8 the finest

- 3** a 1 transmit 3 durable (fax machine)
2 made

- b 1 industry 2 digital 3 laser (CD)

- c 1 carried 3 microchips (mobile phone)
2 composed
a = picture 2 b = picture 3 c = picture 1

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 4 (p. 70)****(Suggested answers)**

- I couldn't live without a telephone or a fridge.
- The most useful invention is the hideaway safe on a coathanger. It's a very good way of keeping valuables safe while on holiday. The golf driving range in your back garden is the most useless idea. It seems to me as though it would be quite dangerous and that you would be better off going to a golf driving range at a club.
- It is made in Britain although it was developed by an American. It consists of 2 applicator trays and a whitening gel. The price is £9.99. It is used for whitening discoloured teeth and could be used by anyone.
- (Before Ss are assigned this as written HW, T should discuss it in class to help Ss write a proper letter of complaint using the appropriate style. Refer Ss to Unit 2 p. 50 to revise letter writing if necessary.)

(Suggested answer)

- Dear Sir,
I am writing to complain about a Micromix which I bought from 'Scots' last week.
After using the Micromix for the first time I noticed that the plastic had discoloured and that the button had melted. It seemed that the product was completely unsuitable for microwave use. I returned it to the store where I had bought it, expecting a complete refund. Instead, your sales representative was extremely rude to me, accusing me of using it in my oven instead. He refused to give me a new Micromix or my money back.

I hope that you will be able to offer me a more acceptable solution after inspecting the Micromix which I enclose. I also expect you to reprimand your sales representative for his behaviour.

I look forward to your prompt reply.

Yours sincerely,
(full name)

Exam Focus – Use of English (p. 71)

(**Part 1** is a modified cloze text containing 15 gaps followed by 15 four-option multiple choice questions. Ss read through the text to get an understanding of its general meaning. Then Ss read the text a second time trying to find the answer. Keep in mind that some choices are meant to be misleading. Ss should read a third time to check if their choices make sense.)

➤ Part 1

1 B	4 B	7 D	10 B	13 A
2 D	5 A	8 C	11 D	14 B
3 D	6 D	9 A	12 B	15 C

(After Ss have done Part 1 T asks them to list advantages/disadvantages of tourism.)

➤ Prepositions

1 for	16 by/with/at
2 to/for	17 at
3 for	18 in
4 about	19 of
5 for/to	20 in
6 in	21 of
7 in	22 on/about/against/of
8 on	23 (a)round
9 of	24 in
10 with/without	25 for
11 from	26 in(to)/with
12 of	27 with
13 on/upon, for	28 for/at
14 in/into/with	29 against
15 with	30 for

(Ss should memorise these prepositions. T checks in the following lesson.)

Exam Focus – Listening (Part 3) (p. 72)

(**Part 3** is a multiple matching exercise based on a series of five short related extracts of about 30 seconds each, from monologues or exchanges between interacting speakers. Ss listen, making a first choice of answers. Then they listen again searching for specific words related to the options.)

19 D	20 C	21 F	22 B	23 A
------	------	------	------	------

Part 3

You'll hear five people talking about different kinds of shops. For questions 19 to 23, choose from the list A to F the type of shop that is being described. Use the letters only once. There's one extra letter which you do not need to use.

Speaker 1 (female): If you ever go to London, there are some very famous stores you must visit. The first time I went to Lockhearts, which is now my favourite, I spent all day there. I didn't think it was possible, but I spent hours looking at everything – perfume, jewellery, clothes, shoes, carpets, toys – everything! In fact I even had lunch there. These stores are always wonderful at Christmas too. You can do all your Christmas shopping in one go, and if you can't find what you're looking for, they will often help you by trying to order it. In fact, the store has a saying: 'If it exists, we can get it for you'.

Speaker 2 (male): When I was young I used to love going to these stores. There were so many interesting things to look at and feel – ropes and chains of all shapes and sizes. They also used to have a row of front doors of houses for sale. I used to go up and down the aisle pressing all the doorbells as I went ... but I loved looking at the paint best. I'd never seen so many different shades of pink before. I used to mentally redecorate my bedroom. There were always a few plants beside the checkout and my dad would sometimes buy me some seeds so that I could try to grow some flowers.

Speaker 3 (female): It's so useful having that little shop at the end of the road. I do most of my shopping in the supermarket, but there are always things that I forget to buy, and of course I like to buy fresh bread and milk every day, and I don't always have time to go to the supermarket. The man who owns the shop is so nice too. I actually enjoy going down the road to buy a newspaper or some tea or whatever. He always suggests something good or particularly fresh and I always end up spending a lot more than I intended. He's just a good salesman that's all, and he deserves to be successful.

Speaker 4 (male): You know how you said that you were looking for a new suite for your living room ... well... I saw a really comfortable one in 'Richardsons'. I think it would go nicely in your room and the colour is exactly what you're looking for. But, the interesting thing was that the saleswoman advised me to go to the department store across the road because it's £50 cheaper there. But she did say that if your existing sofa and chairs haven't fallen apart, and it's just that you don't like the covers anymore, then they can make loose-covers for you. That's an idea you know, Jane, because your sofa really is in good

condition. They have lovely fabrics too and can make lampshades and curtains to match.

Speaker 5 (male): Oooh... I HATE shops like that – they're so touristy and false. In Scotland they are full of tartan dish-cloths, kilts and miniature Loch Ness monsters for people to take back home. You can always hear bagpipe music playing, and other kinds of traditional music that no one really listens to any more. But, I suppose that if you are interested in history and culture, they do tend to stock lots of interesting books and calendars with nice scenic photographs – they make good presents actually, and, thinking about it, they do normally sell good sweets and chocolate – expensive, but tasty nevertheless.

Exam Focus – Speaking (p. 73)

➤ Part 2

(Suggested answers)

- In **picture A** there is a pyramid, so it must be Egypt, whereas **picture B** is of a swimming pool in the Caribbean or somewhere. Both places look very hot.
- I would most like to visit the pyramids in Egypt as I am very interested in the history of this country.
- When you travel you learn a lot about different cultures and nationalities. You also learn about the history of different places.
- If you travel alone you meet lots of new people because you are not restricted to a group. You can do whatever you want without waiting for someone else to decide. However, travelling alone can be dangerous, and you only have yourself to rely on. Travelling in a group on the other hand can be fun, as you are with your friends. However, sometimes it is difficult to do exactly what you want, as there are other people who may want to do different things.
- **Picture C** shows some sort of traditional festival with people dancing in traditional costume. **Picture D** shows a sign for a concert which will probably be a lot more serious to watch than the dancers in picture C.
- I think I'd enjoy the traditional dancing more, as I don't like classical music.
- The dancing in picture C is similar to the dancing we do in my country. Everybody joins in and enjoys themselves. Some people go to concerts in my country, but only in the big cities.

- Nowadays most people watch TV for entertainment, whereas twenty years ago more people went to the cinema or the theatre. People still go to the theatre and cinema, but it's no longer so important in people's social lives.

Exam Focus – Writing (p. 74)

(Ss are advised to buy a dictionary of quotations e.g. The MacMillan Dictionary of Contemporary Quotations by Johnathon Green)

- 1** 1 d 3 h 5 k 7 f 9 c 11 g
2 j 4 a 6 b 8 e 10 i

2 To make contrasting points

- Killing endangered species is illegal, **nevertheless** people will not stop hunting them.
- **In spite of the** fact that killing endangered species is illegal, people will not stop hunting them.
- Killing endangered species is illegal, **but** people will not stop hunting them.
- **While** killing endangered species is illegal, people will not stop hunting them.
- **Despite** the fact that killing endangered species is illegal, people will not stop hunting them.
- **Even** if killing endangered species is illegal, people will not stop hunting them.
- **Even though** killing endangered species is illegal, people will not stop hunting them.
- Killing endangered species is illegal, **at the same time** people will not stop hunting them.

To list points

- **Firstly**, the government must revise the out-of-date environmental laws which were written twenty years ago.
- **In the first place** the government must revise the out-of-date environmental laws which were written twenty years ago.
- **To start with**, the government must revise the out-of-date laws which were written twenty years ago.
- **Secondly**, the government must revise the out-of-date laws which were written twenty years ago.
- **Thirdly**, the government must revise the out-of-date laws which were written twenty years ago.
- **Finally**, the government must revise the out-of-date laws which were written twenty years ago.

To add more points on a topic

- **What is more**, the city should conduct inspections of zoos.
- The city should **also** conduct inspections of zoos.
- **Apart from this/that/In addition to this**, the city should conduct inspections of zoos.
- **Moreover**, the city should conduct inspections of zoos.
- **Besides**, the city should conduct inspections of zoos.
- The city should conduct inspections of zoos **too**.
- ... **not to mention the fact that**, the city should conduct inspections of zoos.

To list advantages/disadvantages

- **One** of the greatest advantages of regular exercise is that it leads to a healthier lifestyle.
- **Another** great advantage of regular exercise is that it leads to a healthier lifestyle.
- **One other** advantage of regular exercise is that it leads to a healthier lifestyle.
- **A further** advantage of regular exercise is that it leads to a healthier lifestyle.
- **The main advantage** of regular exercise is that it leads to a healthier lifestyle.
- **The first/greatest** advantage of regular exercise is that it leads to a healthier lifestyle.

To express personal opinion

- **To my mind/way of thinking**, department stores offer a greater selection of clothes than small boutiques.
- **I personally believe** department stores offer a greater selection of clothes than small boutiques.
- **It strikes me that** department stores offer a greater selection of clothes than small boutiques.
- **I feel very strongly that** department stores offer a greater selection of clothes than small boutiques.
- **I am inclined to believe that** department stores offer a greater selection of clothes than small boutiques.
- **It seems to me that** department stores offer a greater selection of clothes than small boutiques.
- **As far as I am concerned** department stores offer a greater selection of clothes than small boutiques.

To refer to other sources

- **With reference to** this report, that brand of sunscreen causes irritation to sensitive skin.

To conclude

- **Finally**, the university offers a wide range of courses and provides modern facilities.
- **Lastly**, the university offers a wide range of courses and provides modern facilities.
- **Above all**, the university offers a wide range of courses and provides modern facilities.
- **All in all**, the university offers a wide range of courses and provides modern facilities.
- **Taking everything into account**, the university offers a wide range of courses and provides modern facilities.
- **On the whole**, the university offers a wide range of courses and provides modern facilities.
- **All things considered**, the university offers a wide range of courses and provides modern facilities.
- **In conclusion**, the university offers a wide range of courses and provides modern facilities.
- **As I have said**, the university offers a wide range of courses and provides modern facilities.
- **As was previously stated**, the university offers a wide range of courses and provides modern facilities.
- **To sum up**, the university offers a wide range of courses and provides modern facilities.

To express cause

- **Because of** the harsh winter, many crops were destroyed.
- **Owing to** the harsh winter, many crops were destroyed.
- **For this reason**, many crops were destroyed.

To express effect

- Lots of factories have closed down, **therefore**, many people have lost their jobs.
- Lots of factories have closed down; **thus**, many people have lost their jobs.
- Lots of factories have closed down; **consequently**, many people have lost their jobs.
- Lots of factories have closed down, **so**, many people have lost their jobs.
- Lots of factories have closed down, **as a consequence**, many people have lost their jobs.

To emphasise what you say

- **Clearly** research has proved that eating healthy foods and exercising regularly reduce the risk of heart disease.
- **Obviously** research has proved that eating healthy foods and exercising regularly reduce the risk of heart disease.

- **Of course** research has proved that eating healthy foods and exercising regularly reduce the risk of heart disease.
- **In particular**, research has proved that eating healthy foods and exercising regularly reduce the risk of heart disease.

To express reality

- **Actually** the report states that most college graduates are interested in pursuing a Masters' degree in the future.
- **As a matter of fact**, the report states that most college graduates are interested in pursuing a Masters' degree in the future.
- **In practice** the report states that most college graduates are interested in pursuing a Masters' degree in the future.
- **The fact of the matter is** the report states that most college graduates are interested in pursuing a Masters' degree in the future.

To express difference between appearance and reality

- **On the face of it** the building looked safe, but after a detailed inspection it was reported to be in need of major structural repairs.
- **Apparently** the building was safe, but after a detailed inspection it was reported to be in need of major structural repairs.

To state an argument against your opinion

- **It is popularly believed that** the teaching profession needs more qualified educators.
- **People often claim that** the teaching profession needs more qualified educators.
- **It is often alleged that** the teaching profession needs more qualified educators.
- **People argue that** the teaching profession needs more qualified educators.
- **It is a fact that** the teaching profession needs more qualified educators.

To state other people's opinions

- **Some people argue that** the mayor's proposal to raise local taxes is unfair.
- **A lot of people think/believe** the mayor's proposal to raise local taxes is unfair.

To introduce the other side of the argument

- **However, there are people** who believe that increasing the school year will only overwork students.

- **Those who oppose** increasing the school year **claim that** it will only overwork students.

To express balance

- **On the one hand** working for a large company is prestigious, but it can be very stressful.
- Working for a large company is prestigious, but **on the other hand** it can be very stressful.
- John is a hard working person, **whereas** Ann isn't.

To give examples

- **For example**, in the past six months retailers have reported a 25% drop in sales of electronic equipment.

To refer to what actually happens

- **In effect** consumers spend more money on luxury items.

To make general statements

- **Generally**, girls get better exam results than boys.
- **In general**, girls get better exam results than boys.
- **As a general rule**, girls get better exam results than boys.
- **On the whole**, girls get better exam results than boys.

To make partly correct statements

- Considering the high rate of unemployment, some companies have, **up to a point**, tried to create more positions.
- Considering the high rate of unemployment, some companies have, **to a certain extent**, tried to create more positions.
- Considering the high rate of unemployment, some companies have, **in a way**, tried to create more positions.
- Considering the high rate of unemployment, some companies have, **in a sense**, tried to create more positions.

To express limit of knowledge

- **To the best of my knowledge**, residents were opposed to the city's plan to build a nuclear power plant in their area.
- **For all I know** residents were opposed to the city's plan to build a nuclear power plant in their area.

To rephrase

- **That is to say**, they disagree with the manager's decision.

To bring up other points or aspects

- **Regarding** the community, the area is in need of a new elementary school.
- **With regards** to the community, the area is in need of a new elementary school.
- **As for** the community, the area is in need of a new elementary school.

To imply that nothing else needs to be said

- **Anyway**, a new community centre will greatly benefit the people of the town.
- **In any case**, a new community centre will greatly benefit the people of the town.

Accepting the situation

- **As it is**, the situation cannot be improved.
- **Things being as they are**, the situation cannot be improved.

3 Model 1 is good and Model 2 is bad.

Model 1 follows the outline of a good argumentative essay. It is formal in style and the topic is clearly stated in the first paragraph. The advantages and disadvantages are clearly stated and each paragraph begins with a key sentence which sums up a particular point. Examples are given to support each point of view. The quotation used is from a reputable source and adds vitality to the composition. It makes good use of linking words and phrases. The concluding paragraph sums up the entire composition by restating the topic with balanced consideration to both views, and it also expresses the writer's personal opinion.

Model 2 does not follow the outline of a good argumentative essay. It is very informal in style with incorrect language. There are grammatical errors throughout. Each paragraph is constructed poorly. The first sentence in each paragraph does not sum up the main part of the paragraph and there are no examples to support each point of view. Though some advantages are stated, disadvantages are not. The quotation used is not from a reputable source. The conclusion doesn't give balanced consideration to both views. The last paragraph is only one sentence. There are no linking words or phrases.

4 Advantages:

- It tends to go hand in hand with being rich.
- You can be miserable in comfort.
- With fame comes adoration.
- People always want to see you and be seen with you.
- You are welcomed wherever you go.
- You are surrounded by the good things of life and protected from the bad.

Disadvantages:

- Lack of privacy.
- Constant harassment from people.
- Lives are scrutinised in newspapers and magazines.
- Suspicion that people like you for who you are rather than the kind of person you are.

Linking words: **however** (to make contrasting points), **the main advantage** (to list advantages), **despite** (to make contrasting points), **furthermore** (to add more points on a topic), **in conclusion** (to conclude).

5 **Linking words:** In my opinion, the first reason, for example, moreover, the final and most important reason, such as, while, contrary to popular belief, as already stated**Examples:**

- For example, diabetics would not be able to inject insulin ... had it not been developed by testing it on animals.
- insecticides
- cancer

6

- The suggestion that new laws should be passed is justified by the point that the government should have greater control over guns.
- The suggestion that the government should create jobs and work programmes for young people is justified by the point that young people need help to find work.
- The suggestion that young people should be taught that violence is not the answer to their problems is justified by the point that better education is an important part of deterring crime.
- The suggestion that more criminals will be caught is justified by the point that more vigilant policing is the best solution to the problem.

7 • Arguments for technological and scientific advancement:

- Makes our lives easier.
- Businesses cannot function easily without faxes, photocopiers, and telephones.

• Arguments against technological and scientific advancement:

- Everything can be destroyed at the touch of a button.
- Machines will completely replace humans.
- Leave fewer jobs.
- Reduce human contact.

*Note: special emphasis should be given to the Discussion Clock on p. 80 in the Ss' book. This clock helps Ss organise their thoughts when considering a discursive essay and come up with a well-written composition. T can demonstrate its function by analysing the following question: **The importance of sport.***

Discuss. T helps Ss analyse the subject using the discussion clock and/or gives them ideas to demonstrate how the clock works. After Ss have worked on this, they are asked to do Ex. 8 as follow up.

Psychological: Can have both good and bad effects on self-confidence, depending on ability.

Religious: games were held in ancient times to honour the gods.

Scientific: New drugs developed to improve athletes' performance.

Artistic: Sports such as synchronised swimming and gymnastics include artistic element.

Economic: Sport can be very profitable and creates revenue for the sporting industry.

Educational: Sport plays an important role in children's mental and physical development, teaching them to work as part of a team and co-operate with others.

Social: Sport unites people from different social backgrounds, but can also divide them e.g. crowd violence at football matches.

Political: Governments can influence sport, e.g. banning athletes from competing in certain events for political reasons.

Moral: Events are often sponsored by cigarette manufacturers to promote products harmful to health, which can be considered immoral.

Historical: Sport has been part of people's lives since ancient times, and continues to play a great role in today's society.

Geographical: Sport not only unites people from different backgrounds, but from different parts of the world as well e.g. when watching the World Cup.

Personal: Sport should be used to encourage people to lead a more healthy and peaceful life.

8 • Aspects in composition:

- **Social** – Sport unites people from different social backgrounds and increases people's tolerance of each other.

Opposite point of view: Just as sport unites people so it can divide them ... crowd violence at football games.

- **Educational** – Sport plays a great role in both children's physical and mental development.

Teaches children to work as part of a team and co-operate with others while improving their physical condition.

Opposite point of view: Children who are less able to perform in sports are likely to feel inadequate compared to more gifted classmates, which may affect self-confidence.

- **Economic** – Sport can be very profitable ... this creates revenue for the sport industry ...

Opposite point of view: Large sums of money are often paid to organisers of sporting events ... to promote products which are harmful to one's health.

9 1 B 2 C 3 A 4 D

Techniques

Paragraph 1: Opening paragraph starts with a problem that needs a solution.

Last paragraph states a strong, firm opinion.

Paragraph 2: Opening paragraph states a strong, firm opinion.

Last paragraph includes a quotation.

Paragraph 3: Opening paragraph starts with a rhetorical question.

Last paragraph summarises the article and states a personal opinion.

Paragraph 4: Opening paragraph begins by addressing the reader directly.

Last paragraph summarises the article.

Outlines used for each topic

- Topic 1 – Expressing opinion. (see p. 78 S's Book)
- Topic 2 – Discursive Essay. (see p. 80 S's Book)
- Topic 3 – Providing solutions to problems. (see p. 79 S's Book)
- Topic 4 – Expressing opinion. (see p. 78 S's Book)

Suggested titles for each topic

- **Topic 1** – 'Increase In Drug Use Threatens Society?' or 'Society Threatened by Drugs.'
- **Topic 2** – 'Television Threatens Children's Development,' or 'Television: Child Foe Not Friend.'
- **Topic 3** – 'What Can Be Done To Protect Our Environment?' or 'Environmental Threat Continues ...'
- **Topic 4** – 'The Ups and Downs of Living Abroad,' or 'Is Living Abroad A Perfect Solution?'

10 (*T should go through each topic and discuss the plan before Ss write the compositions.*)

(Suggested answers)**1 Living in the Countryside – Advantages/ Disadvantages**

Introduction: state topic

Main body:

advantages: less traffic and industry, fewer health problems, better surroundings, less stressful life

disadvantages: fewer schools/libraries/hospitals, less public transport, less entertainment

Conclusion: balanced consideration

There are many points to take into consideration with regard to the benefits of living in the country.

The biggest advantage of the countryside is the environment. Less traffic and industry means that the air is cleaner and people have fewer health problems. Secondly, the hills, trees and fields found in the countryside provide a more beautiful setting in which to live. Finally, people are thought to be friendlier in the country and there is certainly less crime. It can be argued that these factors lead to a less stressful, healthier lifestyle.

On the other hand, the country has fewer schools, libraries and hospitals. In addition, getting to these places can also be difficult without a car since there is less public transport.

Some people believe a further disadvantage is that living in the countryside is boring because there are fewer cinemas, discos, museums etc.

In summary, despite its lack of public services and entertainments, the countryside still offers a healthy lifestyle in an attractive environment. Whether or not it appeals to you depends entirely upon your perception of quality of life.

2 Importance of tourism – discursive

Introduction: state topic

Main body: – economic benefits
– environmental changes
– cultural aspect

Conclusion: give own opinion

Tourism has become big business over the last 30 years and improved communications will ensure that it continues to grow.

The economic benefits tourism provides to a region are clear. Thousands of people work in the tourist industry, from bar owners to airport workers, and in many rural areas tourism is essential to the economy. However, jobs are often seasonal and some thriving summer resorts are nearly deserted in winter time.

Tourism can also dramatically change the landscape of an area. Many beautiful beaches have been spoilt by the construction of large hotels and many villages become neon-lit holiday resorts. Yet it can be argued that numerous sites and monuments have been restored with money earned from tourism.

Many people enjoy visiting foreign cities, museums and galleries. Travelling is an excellent way of gaining knowledge of other countries' history and therefore tourism plays an important role in breaking down negative national stereotypes. Sadly, many 'package holiday' tourists spend their vacation on a beach, rarely even meeting a local person.

In my opinion, tourism can only benefit a region fully if it is properly managed. It is also important to remember that there is always more to see in a country than its beaches.

3 Banning cars (expressing opinion)

Outline

Introduction: state your opinion

Main body:

Para 2 – first point – driving/parking difficulties

Para 3 – second point – better public transport, jobs

Para 4 – last point – pollution

Conclusion: Restate opinion expressing it differently

The enormous number of cars on the road today is causing more problems than anyone could have imagined. I strongly believe that cars should be banned from city centres.

Huge traffic jams and parking difficulties have become a normal part of city life. This makes driving in a city centre an uncomfortable and frustrating experience. A ban on cars would end such annoying journeys.

Restrictions like this would also force city authorities to increase public transport services. As well as creating jobs, improved rail, bus or tram connections would result in everybody being able to travel to and from the city much more easily and quickly.

These are important points, but by far the most serious reason for banning cars is pollution. Cars cause terrific damage to both the environment and to health.

Many old buildings are weakened by the constant rush of traffic and in London over 30% of schoolchildren suffer from respiratory problems such as asthma.

To sum up, banning cars would not only make it easier to get into and out of a city centre but also lead to improved health and a cleaner, more pleasant environment.

4 Endangered animals – Providing solutions to problems

Introduction: state problems

Main body: – create bigger national parks
– ban sale of animal products
– ban hunting

Conclusion: restate opinion

The natural environment of many animals has been either destroyed or harmed during the 20th century. The main reasons for this are deforestation and the expansion of towns and cities.

Furthermore the high prices offered for the skin and organs of rare species has led to an increase in hunting. These activities have led to the possible extinction of a large number of animals.

One solution to this problem would be to create more 'nature reserves' and to expand those already in existence. In these parks man is prohibited from building or interfering with the animals in any way. National parks have been successful in many parts of Asia and Africa.

Unfortunately, hunters in poor countries are encouraged to break park laws by the demand for products such as animal skins, elephant tusks etc. More countries need to ban the sale of these things. If a hunter cannot sell his product, he will eventually stop hunting. Rich Western nations could also help poorer countries 'police' parks, ensuring hunters cannot kill or take any animals.

In conclusion, governments, spurred on by the protests and petitions of the general public, must decide if enough is being done to protect endangered animals.

Unit 4

Part 1

➤ Warm-up Activities: Part 1 (p. 82)

(Suggested answers)

- Trees, grass, wood, mushrooms, forest, vegetation, squirrels, leaves etc.

(Suggested answer)

- Trees are important for: oxygen production, protection of ecological balance, timber industry etc.
Forests are damaged through: air pollution, acid rain, climatic changes, expansion of cities etc.
In order to prevent damage to the environment people need to be made aware of the problems and the governments should enforce stricter regulations for companies to prevent them from polluting the environment.
- **a** – They are sick and dying. They are being damaged.
- **b** – Air pollution and climate changes.
- **c** – There will be a reduction in water quality. It will also cause a crisis in the fishing, tourist and timber industries. The ecological balance in Europe will also be threatened.
- **d** – They will investigate forest protection and ask for safeguards to protect the health of Europe's trees.

➤ **Reading Task: Part 1 (pp. 82 - 83)**

1 F 2 A 3 H 4 C 5 G 6 B

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 1 (pp. 84 - 85)**

1 continent – area of land made up of various countries, e.g. Europe

factors – reasons for a decision or action

widespread – occurring in a lot of places

forestry – the study and practice of planting, caring for a managing forests

ignoring – not paying attention to

timber – wood for commercial use

ecological balance – perfect state of nature

substantial – vast

safeguards – defences

- 2**
- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1 backyard | 6 condemned |
| 2 wide-ranging | 7 experts |
| 3 woodland | 8 commitments |
| 4 put forward | 9 reductions |
| 5 discoloration | 10 responded |

- 3**
- | | |
|--------------------|--------------|
| 1 Conservationists | 6 alarming |
| 2 endangered | 7 Ecologists |
| 3 Environmental | 8 reduction |
| 4 destruction | 9 protection |
| 5 survival | 10 hopefully |

4 Because of freak weather conditions, fire and acid rain that destroy woodlands and forests.

5 (*Ss do Ex. 5 on their own, then T elicits/explains the meaning of each distractor.*)

1 A 2 D 3 A 4 D 5 C 6 C

- 1 A **protect** (v) = to ensure that sth or sb is safe from harm
 B **shelter** (v) = to give sb or sth protection from the weather, attack etc.
 C **cover** (v) = to place sth over sth else in order to protect it
 D **support** (v) = to give encouragement to sb for sth
- 2 A **edition** (n) = form in which a book is published
 B **issue** (n) = a particular edition of a magazine, newspaper etc.
 C **publicity** (n) = information about sth in order to attract attention
 D **report** (n) = paper giving information about sth

3 A **region** (n) = area not exactly defined
 B **state** (n) = country run by a political organisation

C **place** (n) = particular building/area/site

D **site** (n) = place where sth is situated (e.g. camp site)

4 A **standard** (n) = certain level of sth usu quality
 B **amount** (n) = quantity of sth

C **quantity** (n) = a certain amount/measure of sth

D **quality** (n) = degree of goodness or worth

5 A **wreck** (n) = vehicle, plane etc that has been badly damaged in an accident

B **ruin** (n) = state or process of being destroyed

C **damage** (n) = loss of value caused by an accident, event etc.

D **disaster** (n) = event that causes damage or ruin

6 A **tip** (n) = pointed edge of sth

B **top** (n) = highest point or part of sth

C **summit** (n) = meeting between two or more important leaders

D **peak** (n) = highest point of sth

6 (*Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.*)

- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| 1 severe | 6 ecological |
| 2 to reach | 7 substantial |
| 3 detailed | 8 there is a need |
| 4 to produce | 9 tropical |
| 5 forestry | |

7

1 sign of the times	4 shows signs of
2 backbreaking	5 sign language
3 backup	6 backbone

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 1 (p. 85)****(Suggested answers)**

- reforestation, turn forests into protected areas, campaign to reduce pollution and make air cleaner, try to increase knowledge on the subject.
- **Dangers that forests are facing:** forests are being destroyed by air pollution, environmental damage. Europe only has 1% of its ancient forests remaining.

Consequences of damaging the woodlands: if the woodlands continue to be damaged, it will cause a reduction in water quality, a crisis in the fishing, tourist and timber industries, and it will threaten the ecological balance in Europe.

Action being taken by the European Community:

a programme of forest management has been organised. European parliament is investigating forest protection: it may also ask for new safeguards to protect Europe's trees.

- (This activity should be done after T has presented the theory of articles. See S's book p. 100. T can help Ss with ideas before he/she assigns this as written HW.)

Pollution is increasing due to the vast amounts of gases being emitted from vehicle exhausts and from factories pumping out enormous amounts of smoke in order to supply the growing demand for electricity. Farmland is being destroyed by chemicals and the increased use of pesticides. In addition, accidents involving oil tankers are damaging the coastline and animal life there. But all this could change if people become aware of the problems.

It would help if people cut down on electricity by switching off the light when it is not necessary; not relying on their computer for everything and by seeking alternative forms of entertainment instead of watching TV all the time.

People have also become too dependent on their cars and should try to cycle or walk for shorter journeys.

Stricter government rules are required in order to prevent factories from pumping harmful gases into the atmosphere, which destroy the ozone layer and cause global warming.

Overall, people's attitudes need to change. If everybody can make a small contribution, it will make a big difference in the end.

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 1 (p. 85)**

- | | | |
|--------|-----------|------------|
| 1 even | 6 much | 11 further |
| 2 very | 7 most | 12 most |
| 3 very | 8 further | 13 a bit |
| 4 too | 9 very | 14 any |
| 5 very | 10 far | |

Part 2➤ **Warm-up Activities: Part 2 (p. 86)****(Suggested answers)**

- Birds: flying, wings, feathers, beak, ducks, nest, eggs, pigeons, canary etc.

(Suggested answers)

- It is a heron. It has very large wings, lives on the water and has a large red beak.
- a To see the ocean and find the heron's nest.
b A heron.
c Yes, she does.
d She feels overwhelmed.

➤ **Reading Task: Part 2 (pp. 86 - 87)**

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 7 C (Ln 1 - 2) | 11 A (Ln 26 - 27) |
| 8 C (Ln 4 - 5) | 12 B (Ln 28 - 30) |
| 9 D (Ln 7 - 8) | 13 C (Ln 41 - 42) |
| 10 B (Ln 21) | |

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 2 (pp. 88 - 89)**

- pine tree** – a type of tree that is green all year round

excitement – feeling of enthusiasm about something

heron – large bird found by rivers

nest – place where birds lay their eggs

adventure – exciting sometimes dangerous experience

glory – feeling of having achieved sth great

triumph – feeling caused by winning, or achieving something

fading – getting weaker

bark – thick skin that covers tree trunks

oak tree – type of large tree

twigs – small branches

sticky – difficult to remove; clinging

thorny – covered in sharp spikes

hawks – large birds like eagles, which hunt animals

overwhelmed – unable to act because of strong emotion

sweeping – moving gracefully and without effort

mate – partner

3 (Ss do Ex. 3 on their own then T elicits/explains the meaning of each distractor.)

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 B | 3 A | 5 D | 7 B |
| 2 C | 4 C | 6 A | 8 D |

- A **antique** (adj) = old (used to describe valuable objects)

B **ancient** (adj) = belonging to past civilisations, e.g. Greek, Roman or Egyptian

C **old** (adj) = no longer new/young

D **old-fashioned** (adj) = out of date
- A **arrive in/at** (v) = to come to a place at the end of a journey

B **appear** (v) = to come to a place where you can be seen

- C **reach** (v) = to arrive at/in a place (reach is used without a preposition e.g. reach Plymouth)
- D **go to** (v) = to move/travel to a place for a purpose
- 3 A **marsh** (n) = area of wet land normally near a lake, river or sea
- B **swamp** (n) = land that is covered in water
- C **puddle** (n) = small patch of water
- D **moorland** (n) = hilly land covered with rough grass etc.
- 4 A **cool off** (v) = to become colder
- B **chill** (v) = to become cold
- C **freeze** (v) = to turn into ice; stop suddenly when shocked/scared by sth
- D **dampen** (v) = to make sth wet
- 5 A **swing** (v) = to move backwards and forwards
- B **sway** (v) = to move slowly from side to side
- C **lay** (v) = to put sb or sth in its place carefully
- D **perch** (v) = (of birds) to sit on a branch or sth else
- 6 A **shake** (v) = to move from side to side or up and down quickly because of cold, nervousness or anger
- B **shiver** (v) = to shake slightly because of cold or fright
- C **shudder** (v) = to tremble with disgust or fear
- D **move** (v) = to cause strong feelings in sb such as sadness, happiness etc.
- 7 A **sleepy** (adj) = tired
- B **asleep** (adj) = sleeping
- C **sleep** (adj) = to be asleep
- D **awake** (adj) = not sleeping
- 8 A **hold on** (v) = to take hold of sth to prevent it or you from falling
- B **cling** (v) = to hold onto someone or sth tightly (cling is used with a preposition cling on/to)
- C **tackle** (v) = to attack another player in a ball game in order to take the ball
- D **grip** (v) = to hold sth tightly

4 (Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1 towered above | 7 to feel |
| 2 fast | 8 to grow |
| 3 to creep out | 9 to reach |
| 4 air was | 10 to shine |
| 5 fading | 11 to shake with |
| 6 blood racing | 12 to fly |

5 (If Ss have difficulty with the words, T explains/elicits their meanings before they do Ex. 5 and 6.)

- | | | |
|----------|---------|------------|
| 1 leaves | 3 trunk | 5 branches |
| 2 bark | 4 twig | 6 roots |

6 1 feathers 3 cage 5 peck
2 claws 4 wings 6 beak

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 2 (p. 89)**

- excitement, glory, triumph, bravely, clumsy, stiff, doubt, weak, shaking with exhaustion, overwhelmed, froze
- Possible Title:** A Nasty Experience/Adventure at Dawn

- (Before Ss are assigned this as written HW, T should remind them of all techniques involved in writing narratives emphasising style – See Ss book p. 24.)

• **(Suggested answer)**

... a small, shivering bundle of fur. Looking closely, she realised it was a puppy. She picked it up and it snuggled into her jersey, searching for warmth.

'Come on,' said Julie. She carried the puppy into the house. She dried it off with a tea-towel and noticed that it was wearing a collar, with a tag attached to it. Written on the tag was: Sally, 0171346 7100.

'Is that your phone number Sally?' Julie asked. Sally wagged her tail, and looked up with big, trusting eyes. Julie had secretly been hoping that Sally didn't have an owner, so she could keep her. But now she knew that she would have to take her home. The woman on the phone sounded very nice, and she was overjoyed that Sally had been found. 'We were worried sick,' she said. 'We lost her while walking in the park this morning.'

After they had picked Sally up, Julie felt sad, but she soon cheered up. The owner had said she could walk Sally any time she liked, which was almost as good as having a puppy. Julie had made some new friends.

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 2 (p. 89)**

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 the most beautiful | 5 greener |
| 2 the clearest | 6 the more interesting |
| 3 the most picturesque | 7 better |
| 4 the most majestic | |

Part 3

➤ Warm-up Activities: Part 3 (p. 90)

(Suggested answers)

- These people are diving under the ocean. They could be exploring the ocean and/or looking at coral reefs. Old shipwrecks and treasure could lie at the bottom of the oceans.
- a To enable scientists to guide submarines without them having accidents.
- b Hot fluids were bursting from the sea floor and the water temperature began to rise.
- c They found giant tube worms.
- d In order to discover the temperature of the sea water.

➤ Reading Task: Part 3 (pp. 90 - 91)

14 B 16 A 18 C 20 D
15 E 17 G 19 F

➤ Vocabulary Exercises: Part 3 (p. 92)

- 1** 1 eruption 5 exploiting 9 rapidly
2 hazardous 6 unique 10 samples
3 deposits 7 fluids
4 constant 8 renewal
- 2 a** 1 water under the bridge
2 go through fire and water
3 in uncharted waters
4 in deep water
- b** 1 off to sea 3 high seas
2 all at sea 4 plenty more fish in the sea
- 3** (Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)
- 1 to take 4 to set up 7 ocean
2 mineral 5 volcanic 8 mat
3 geological 6 submarine 9 hot
- 4** (Ss do Ex. 4 on their own, then T elicits/explains the meaning of each distractor.)
- 1 B 3 D 5 A 7 D
2 A 4 C 6 C 8 B
- 1 A **encourage** (v) = to make sb want to do sth
B **enable** (v) = to make sb able to do sth
C **empower** (v) = to give sb authority to do sth
D **entitle** (v) = to give sb the right to do sth
2 A **effort** (n) = use of energy and strength to do sth

- B **attempt** (n) = act of trying to do sth
C **try** (n) = attempt
D **trial** (n) = experimental attempt
- 3 A **band** (n) = group of musicians or robbers
B **gang** (n) = fairly disorganised group of people
C **team** (n) = group of sportspeople who play together
D **crew** (n) = group of people working on a ship
- 4 A **massacre** (n) = killing of large numbers of people/animals
B **holocaust** (n) = large scale destruction of people
C **catastrophe** (n) = (natural or man-made) disaster
D **destruction** (n) = large scale damage
- 5 A **mat** (n) = small covering used to protect a floor
B **carpet** (n) = layer of soft material used to cover the whole floor of house
C **rug** (n) = small carpet covering part of a floor
D **mattress** (n) = thick cushion for sleeping on
- 6 A **area** (n) = region
B **plain** (n) = flat area of land
C **valley** (n) = area with hills on either side
D **meadow** (n) = field covered in grass
- 7 A **subside** (v) = to weaken; become lower
B **sink** (v) = to go down into water
C **ascend** (v) = to go up
D **descend** (v) = to go down
- 8 A **strengthen** (v) = to become stronger
B **harden** (v) = to become more solid
C **tighten** (v) = to become stiffer or narrower
D **toughen** (v) = become less soft or flexible

- 5** 1 explorer 5 preparation 9 ultimately
2 probably 6 equipment 10 notoriously
3 daring 7 provisions
4 continuous 8 closely
- 6** 1 drought 3 earthquake 5 forest fire
2 Famine 4 flood 6 Tidal waves

➤ Follow-up Activities: Part 3 (p. 93)

(Suggested answers)

- There are many reasons for doing this such as: curiosity, search for fuel/minerals/etc, a need to understand more about planets/oceans etc. Nowadays technology makes this kind of exploration possible.
- interest, technology, investigate earth's structure, understand movements of the earth's surface, creation of mountain ranges, record changes, to understand 'mysteries of the deep.'

- 1 **Recent technological developments** have enabled scientists to explore the ocean floor, and discover more about the earth's surface and formation.
- 2 The **geography of the ocean floor** is diverse, with mountain ranges, plains and valleys.
- 3 The **Alvin research group** recorded a volcanic eruption, temperature changes in the water, chemical and geological changes, and the recovery of the area after the eruption.
- 4 The **sea bed** was covered in fresh lava after the eruption, and nothing was left alive. After 21 months though, the sea bed was showing signs of recovery. Giant tube worms had appeared, growing to a length of four feet.

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 3 (p. 93)**

- | | | | | |
|-----------|----------|--------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 to turn | 3 seeing | 5 mentioning | 7 eating | 9 looking |
| 2 eating | 4 to do | 6 to inform | 8 to have | 10 go |

Part 4

➤ **Warm-up Activities: Part 4 (p. 94)**

(Suggested answers)

- Single room, Double room, hotel, flat, house, bed and breakfast, bathroom etc.
- The cottages have thatched roofs and small windows and are surrounded by trees and plants. My ideal cottage would look like these cottages and would have a large kitchen and a fireplace.
- a) True b) False c) True d) False

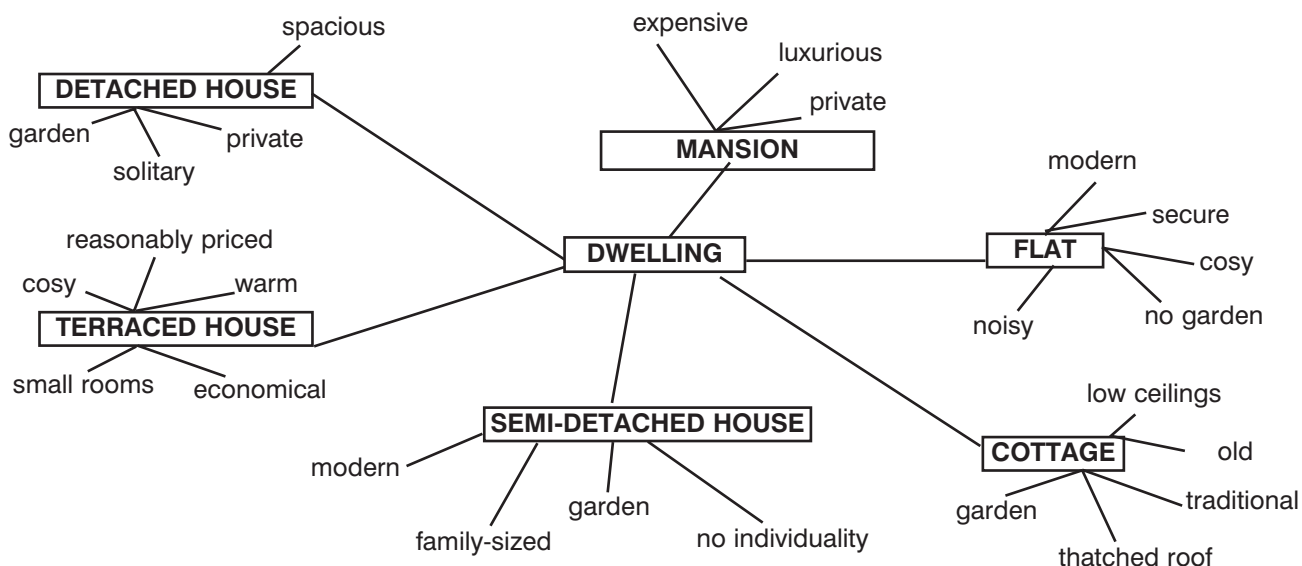
➤ **Reading Task: Part 4 (pp. 94 - 95)**

- | | | | |
|------|------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 21 C | 24 E | 27 G | 32/33 A, F in any order |
| 22 F | 25 D | 28/29 H, C in any order | 34/35 D, F in any order |
| 23 H | 26 E | 30/31 E, F in any order | |

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 4 (p. 96)**

- 1** 1 virtually 2 bay 3 stroll 4 winds 5 recreation

2 (Before Ss do Ex. 2, T draws a spidergram on the board and elicits from Ss various types of dwellings as well as their features.)



- A**
- | | |
|-----------|--------------------|
| 1 tower | 5 cheap to heat |
| 2 suburbs | 6 balcony |
| 3 small | 7 convenient |
| 4 modern | 8 public transport |

- B**
- | | |
|------------|---------------------|
| 1 thatched | 5 cosy |
| 2 quaint | 6 comfortable |
| 3 garden | 7 homely atmosphere |
| 4 small | 8 pleasant |

- C**
- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1 family | 5 thin walls |
| 2 3 bedroomed | 6 homely |
| 3 garden | 7 comfortable |
| 4 garage | |

3 (Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- | | |
|-----------------|------------|
| 1 within | 6 easily |
| 2 coastal | 7 forms |
| 3 half a mile's | 8 tennis |
| 4 puffin | 9 to order |
| 5 home-cooked | |

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 4 (p. 96)**

(Suggested answers)

- I would prefer to stay in Hoopers cottage because it is close to a harbour where you can windsurf, and I enjoy that sport. It overlooks the green, which sounds pleasant, and is convenient for visiting nearby places, such as Puffin Island.

- Dear Sir/Madam

I saw your advertisement for cottages to rent, and I wonder if you could send me a brochure, and some further information.

We are interested in spending a weekend in the Lake District in July and would like to know if any four bedroomed cottages are available. Is it possible to rent somewhere for so short a period of time? If not, could you let me know what the minimum stay period is?

Your advertisement mentions that the properties are all fully furnished. What exactly is provided? Would you have to bring bedlinen?

Lastly, we were planning on bringing our dog with us. Would this be a problem, and are there extra charges for pets?

Thank you for your assistance and I hope to hear from you soon.

Yours faithfully,

Exam Focus – Use of English (p. 97)

➤ **Part 4**

- | | | |
|--------|---------|---------|
| 1 on | 6 from | 11 ✓ |
| 2 ✓ | 7 ✓ | 12 to |
| 3 very | 8 it | 13 ✓ |
| 4 our | 9 ✓ | 14 them |
| 5 been | 10 much | 15 have |

➤ **Part 5**

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1 environmental | 6 scientists |
| 2 reduction | 7 varieties |
| 3 harmful | 8 Additional |
| 4 endangered | 9 vitally |
| 5 threatened | 10 generations |

➤ **Prepositions**

- | | | | |
|--------|---------|-----------|--------|
| 1 in | 7 for | 13 of/by | 19 of |
| 2 for | 8 at | 14 of | 20 in |
| 3 of | 9 with | 15 in | 21 for |
| 4 from | 10 to | 16 in | |
| 5 in | 11 in | 17 in | |
| 6 in | 12 with | 18 in, of | |

Exam Focus – Listening (p. 98)

➤ **Part 4**

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 24 N | 26 D | 28 N | 30 D |
| 25 D | 27 C | 29 C | |

You'll hear a conversation in which David, Clare and Neeraj are trying to decide how to spend their evening. Answer questions 24 to 30 by writing D (for David), N (for Neeraj) or C (for Clare) in the boxes provided.

David: So what are we going to do tonight then? Anybody got any ideas?

Clare: I'm for going out, but I'm not sure about what we should do. What about you, Neeraj?

Neeraj: Oh, I don't know. There are a few good things on TV that I wouldn't mind seeing, including 'Who's afraid of Virginia Woolf'.

Clare: I love that film! Isn't Elizabeth Taylor fantastic in it? She captures the ...

David: (interrupting) No! We've got to go out. We haven't done anything decent at the weekend for ages. I'm fed up with watching TV. We should make a bit of an effort and try and get out of the house. Even if it's just for a coffee.

Neeraj: That's true, David. But I've sort of settled into the idea of relaxing in front of the telly. You know, pizza, a few drinks. But I could be persuaded into going out.

Clare: No, David's right. We've got to get out. As much as I love 'Who's afraid of Virginia Woolf.' and pizza, we should hit the town.

Neeraj: OK, Clare We'll go out – but where?

David: Well that depends on what we feel like doing. There's always the old favourites, the Café Royal for a drink, or we could go for an Indian meal. Does anyone fancy going to a club?

Neeraj: Dancing might be the thing, but what's on Dave?

David: The Place have that American DJ, Kenny Larkin, playing – plus a personal appearance by B12. Or there's that new club on Shandwick Place. That's supposed to be quite good.

Clare: I wouldn't mind going to The Place, but it'll be an all ticket job, won't it? And won't it be expensive?

David: I don't know how much it is. But Matt would be able to get us tickets. You could give him a ring and find out, couldn't you Clare?

Clare: Yeah, I could do that.

Neeraj: What else is there?

Clare: I know, Spike Lee's new film 'Clockers' is on at the Cameo. We could go there have a couple of drinks, maybe something to eat, and go to the late showing. How does that sound Nee?

Neeraj: If we're going to eat out, we could go to the Kebab Mahal. It's cheaper than the Cameo and it's better food.

Clare: What a great idea! I haven't had Indian food for ages.

David: Oh, I've just remembered. The Robert Fish Ceilidh Band are playing at the Assembly Rooms and Mike has left some tickets at the door for us. A Ceilidh is always good for a laugh.

Clare: I saw them during the festival and they were brilliant. It was such a good night!

Neeraj: I'm not all that keen on them, but I'd go at a push. Particularly if we've got free tickets. I'm a bit short of cash this week.

Clare: If we're looking to save some money, I could whip us up some spaghetti. You know I like messing around in the kitchen.

Neeraj: No, it's not that bad. I still want to go to the Kebab Mahal, whatever else happens. What about you Dave?

David: Me too.

Clare: So, we're definitely going for an Indian meal?

David & Neeraj: Yes.

Clare: Now we've got to choose between going clubbing, going to the cinema or going to the Ceilidh.

David: Yes, but why don't we go and eat now and decide what to do once we're there? I'm starving and I'd like to eat soon.

Neeraj: Great idea. Just let me change my top.

Exam Focus – Speaking (p. 99)

➤ Part 3

(Suggested answers)

SA: Pollution is becoming a real problem for forests.

SB: Yes. Waste from cars and factories causes acid rain, which is very bad for the trees. This could be avoided by using other, less harmful kinds of energy.

SA: Well, that would solve the problem of acid rain. But what about other problems, such as people cutting forests down in order to use the wood for timber.

SB: That could be solved by introducing stricter regulations, and growing trees specially for that purpose rather than cutting down ancient forests for wood. But natural disasters can be a problem too: what about forest fires?

SA: Sometimes forest fires are necessary. They clean the forest, which would otherwise have become overgrown. But if we had forest rangers to supervise and control such things, a lot of the danger could be avoided.

SB: I agree. Forest rangers could also make sure that people did not leave litter, or cut down the trees for timber.

SA: Exactly.

➤ Part 4

(Suggested answers)

- **SA:** There are many different things that can be recycled, such as old cans, newspapers, and plastic bags.

SB: Yes, and what about bottles, and other types of plastic, such as shampoo containers?

SA: Absolutely. Recycling is good, because it means that fewer supplies are wasted.

SB: Especially paper, which destroys trees.

SA: Yes, but there are other benefits as well. Making plastic in factories produces harmful gases, so by recycling plastic bags and containers, we help to keep pollution levels low.

SB: Other things can be recycled as well. Having a compost heap in your garden is a good idea: you can put your waste on it, such as unwanted food, and it will get broken down over time. The result is compost, which is very good for the plants.

SA: Yes. In fact, if you know how it is possible to recycle almost anything!

- **SA:** Individuals can cut down on household waste by recycling more.
SB: Yes, and also by just not using so much in the first place! For example, you don't always need to get a plastic bag when you go to the supermarket.
SA: That's the fault of the supermarkets though. So much of what you buy is in packets nowadays. That creates a lot of extra household waste.
SB: Yes, but it's also the fault of the individuals. I've seen people in supermarkets buying three separate pints of milk when they should really have bought one big container.
SA: Yes. And if people were more careful about what they bought, perhaps the food companies would be more reliable about packaging.
SB: I agree.

- **SA:** It is very important to protect the environment for a lot of reasons. If we do not protect the environment now, we will destroy the planet for future generations.
SB: Yes. If we keep using motor cars, for example, the air will become unbreathable.
SA: Also, if we continue producing CFC's, more of the ozone layer will be destroyed, and more people will get skin cancer.
SB: That will also cause global warming, which means that sea levels could rise, because icebergs will melt.
SA: Pollution from factories will lead to acid rain destroying the forests.
SB: Yes, which will mean less oxygen being produced by trees.
SA: Rubbish is another problem. It is important to clean up the rubbish that is polluting the oceans.
SB: Yes. And the dangerous oil spills from big ships, which are killing so much wildlife.

- **SA:** I think that there are a lot of things the government should do to reduce pollution. For example, they should be taking steps to ban motor cars, which pollute the atmosphere.
SB: Yes maybe, but they could never do that. How would people get around? Motor cars are much too popular for the government to ban them.
SA: People could use electric cars. Of course they couldn't ban them now, but they could take steps to slowly introduce other, less harmful kinds of transport.
SB: I think that the government should try and clean up rubbish in the city.

SA: Yes. They could provide more litter bins for people to use. That would prevent the problem from happening again.

SB: Perhaps they should pay for a campaign to educate people about the dangers of polluting the environment, and ways of becoming more environmentally friendly.

SA: That's a good idea. If people knew more about it, perhaps something could be done.

SB: Yes. Definitely.

Exam Focus – Writing (p. 100)

ARTICLES (*While teaching articles, T should elicit style techniques from Ss, by revising style from previous units. Ss should be asked to memorise the outlines on p. 100 of the Student's Book and refer to them when necessary.*)

1 1 C 2 E 3 D 4 B 5 A

2 (Suggested headlines)

- 1 'Hidden dangers at the beach' or 'Beaches – a danger zone.'
- 2 'War against diseases' or 'New breakthroughs in modern medicine.'
- 3 'Passion – Here today, gone tomorrow.'
- 4 'Cape May Resort – a hidden paradise' or 'Exotic Hawaii.'

- 3**
- 1 C first paragraph – the reader is addressed directly
last paragraph – the reader is given something to consider
The outline for a discursive article should be used.
(Suggested title) Sport in Schools.
 - 2 F first paragraph – a strong opinion is stated
last paragraph – the article is summarised
The outline for a 'for and against' article should be used.
(Suggested title) Boxing Ban.
 - 3 E first paragraph – a rhetorical question is asked
last paragraph – a personal opinion is stated
The outline for a 'for and against' article should be used.
(Suggested title) Computer versus Teachers.
 - 4 A first paragraph – a strong opinion is stated
last paragraph – the article is summarised (it ends with a quotation)
The outline for an article giving advantages and disadvantages should be followed.
(Suggested title) Life in the City.

- 5 D first paragraph – the reader is addressed directly
last paragraph – a personal opinion is stated
The outline for an article giving advantages and disadvantages should be followed.
(Suggested title) Is Air Travel Necessary?
- 6 B first paragraph – starts with a problem that needs a solution
last paragraph – the article is summarised
The outline for an article providing solutions to a problem should be used.
(Suggested title) Teenage Alcoholism.

- 4 1 However – to make contrasting points.
2 The main disadvantage of – disadvantages.
3 Moreover – to add more points to a topic.
4 In addition to – to add more points.
5 On the other hand – to express balance.
6 Apart from – to add more points on a topic.
7 All things considered – to conclude.

5 Model 1

- 1 without the basic knowledge of
- 2 To start with
- 3 should be in constant contact
- 4 Thus, any problems that do arise can be dealt with quickly.
- 5 the students are kept motivated and willing to study.
- 6 it is the parents' responsibility to understand.
- 7 This involves helping them with their homework.
- 8 the solution lies in the improvement.

Model 2

- 1 without knowing
- 2 Firstly
- 3 should have close contact
- 4 so that any problems can quickly be sorted out
- 5 the kids learn and their work is rewarded.
- 6 the parents should be more understanding.
- 7 They should offer help with homework
- 8 I believe that things will get better

- 6 The dynamic city of Frankfurt in central Germany is perfect for those looking for an exciting break. It is located on the river Main, in one of the most scenic parts of Germany.

Skyscrapers tower over the skyline, their bright lights reflecting in the river, and the busy hum of traffic is accompanied by the quiet lapping of the river as it flows its way steadily under the numerous illuminated bridges.

You will find it difficult not to get caught up in the hustle and bustle that is characteristic of Frankfurt's busy streets. At night the city is transformed into an exhilarating centre full of night life.

If you are looking for a faster pace of life, Frankfurt is the place to go; you certainly will not be disappointed.

- 7 **Purpose of paragraph 1** – Name and location of place and reason for choosing it.

Purpose of paragraphs 2 and 3 – Particular details of the place.

Purpose of paragraph 4 – Feelings and final thoughts about the place, recommendation.

Words where senses are used: smell of pine trees, crunch of snow.

- 8 The outline that must be used here is for an article providing **solutions to problems**.

Suggested answer for missing paragraphs:

An effective solution would be for the government to begin building houses and flats that can be rented to homeless people at a cheap rate. There is also a need for hostels to deal with teenagers running away from broken homes.

Another suggestion would be to remedy the cause of homelessness. The government should help people find work by creating jobs and work programmes for the long term unemployed. More support could be given to families which are experiencing financial or physical and emotional problems through charitable foundations and government funded health clinics.

- 9 (*T is advised to revise the use of linking words used in argumentative composition. See page 75 in Student's Book before Ss do Ex. 9.*)

1B **first paragraph** – starts with a problem that needs a solution

last paragraph – the article is summarised
Article giving advantages and disadvantages
(Suggested headline) Comfort or the Environment?/Is the car the best means of transport?

2C **first paragraph** – starts with a problem that needs a solution

last paragraph – the article is summarised
Article providing solutions to a problem
(Suggested headline) The Decline of Books

3D **first paragraph** – starts with a quotation
last paragraph – a personal opinion is stated
 Article giving ‘for and against’ arguments
 (Suggested headline) War or Peace?

4A **first paragraph** – addresses the reader directly
last paragraph – ends with a quotation
 Article giving arguments ‘for and against’
 (Suggested headline) Child Abuse?

5E **first paragraph** – make reference to a strange scene
last paragraph – leaves the reader with something to consider
 Discursive article
 (Suggested headline) Environmental Disaster

10 Suggested answer for missing paragraphs:

Paragraph 1 – Over the past few decades it has come to light that the ozone layer surrounding the earth is slowly being destroyed due to the vast amounts of chemicals polluting the atmosphere. Despite the efforts of some environmental control groups to raise public awareness on this matter, very little has been done to prevent its destruction. Clearly something must be done before it is too late.

Paragraph 4 – People have caused enough harm to the earth. It is now up to the future generations to improve the situation by ensuring that the protection of the ozone layer remains a priority, through education.

11 Suggested answer for missing paragraphs:

Paragraph 1 – Over the past few decades television has become an important part of many people’s lives. An increasing number of households own televisions to the extent that only a very small percentage of people do not possess a set.

Paragraph 4 – On balance, while television can be beneficial to a child’s education, it can also have a detrimental effect on their social development. It is therefore important to ensure that it is used in moderation and does not replace social contact in a child’s life.

12 1 Advantages/Disadvantages
 (Suggested headline) Dog – Man’s Best Friend?
 Outline: state topic
 give advantages
 give disadvantages
 give a balanced consideration/opinion

2 For and against
 (Suggested headline) Multilingual Kids?
 Outline: state topic
 arguments for
 arguments against
 balanced consideration

3 Expressing Opinion
 (Suggested headline) Rich Rewards
 Outline: state opinion
 point 1
 point 2
 restate opinion and reason

4 For and against
 (Suggested headline) Ban on Older Drivers
 Outline: state topic
 arguments for
 arguments against
 balanced consideration

5 Suggestions
 (Suggested headline) Healthy Living
 Outline: state topic
 Suggestion 1
 Suggestion 2
 best option and reason

6 Discursive
 (Suggested headline) Fashion at the Expense of Taste
 Outline: state topic
 one point of view
 another point of view
 third point of view
 give own opinion

7 Narrative/Descriptive
 (Suggested headline) Beautiful Lewes
 Outline: name and location of place
 reason for choosing the place
 particular details about the place
 feelings, final thoughts about place
 and recommendation.

(Suggested answers to questions 1, 2, 7)

1 **The advantages and disadvantages of owning a pet.**

Owning a pet is something that many people these days decide to do, mostly due to the fact that, for most, it has more advantages than disadvantages.

One of the main advantages of owning a pet is that it can provide a much-needed sense of companionship to those who would otherwise

be living a lonely life, for example the elderly. A pet will always be a faithful and loyal companion, a valuable source of comfort, and it is very common for pet owners to become extremely attached to their animals; in some cases, more than they do to humans. This is understandable, because an animal will never question its owner's behaviour and will always make them feel valued and loved. It was once said that 'You can tell by the kindness of a dog how a human should be.'

However, there are certain disadvantages to owning a pet, particularly for those who live in an urban area. This is mainly due to the fact that there is not enough space in small apartments to accommodate a family plus a pet. Added to this is the fact that it is cruel to keep an animal in cramped conditions where it is not able to run around freely.

Another disadvantage of owning a pet is the fact that it can cost a lot of money. Food has to be bought, and vet's fees paid, among other things.

In conclusion, although there are a lot of advantages associated with owning a pet, they do not always outweigh the disadvantages that some people may face. As such, prospective owners should carefully consider the various aspects of owning a pet before taking on such a large responsibility.

2 **All children should be made to learn at least one foreign language.**

The question of whether all children should be made to learn a foreign language is one that has arisen over the past decade with the formation of the European Union leading to closer ties with other European countries. This has led to a need for better communication between countries in order to improve relations.

It can therefore be said that there are several very good reasons for children to learn a foreign language, the main one being that it will ensure that they have a future ahead of them in today's competitive job market where a knowledge of languages is a definite asset when applying for a job. What is more, knowing a foreign language gives a young person greater freedom to travel and to work abroad, meaning that they will not be confined solely to working in their home country, but will be able to work anywhere they desire in Europe.

However, there are also several arguments against making all children learn a foreign

language, the main one being that not all children have the ability to learn languages.

While some have a natural talent for languages, others may perform better in other subjects, such as science or mathematics. If such children are made to learn languages which they find difficult, this may lead to feelings of inadequacy which might affect a child's academic performance as a whole.

In conclusion, all children should be encouraged to learn a foreign language because it will undoubtedly be of advantage to them. However, those who are unable to, should not be made to take up a foreign language because the pressure of having to learn may ultimately do them more harm than good.

7 **'Lewes is always there for you'**

The town of Lewes in East Sussex, on the south coast of England, is one of the most scenic in the region. Originally a market town, it is now the administrative centre of the region. Lewes is also home to a Norman castle, built when the Normans invaded England in the eleventh century.

Visitors to the castle will be greeted with a panoramic view of the surrounding countryside and the English Channel in the distance. There is also a small museum with artefacts from the Middle Ages. The castle is in such good condition that you can almost hear the cannons booming as battles were fought.

Lewes has a successful handicraft industry, and visitors to 'The Needles,' a shopping centre, are sure to find something to their taste in one of the many gift shops.

Set deep in the Sussex countryside, Lewes is a beautiful old town, and is so close to the coast that you can almost smell the sea air.

Anyone looking for a quiet weekend in the countryside will be pleasantly surprised by Lewes, where quality shopping can be combined with sightseeing or just a relaxing stroll through the historic streets.

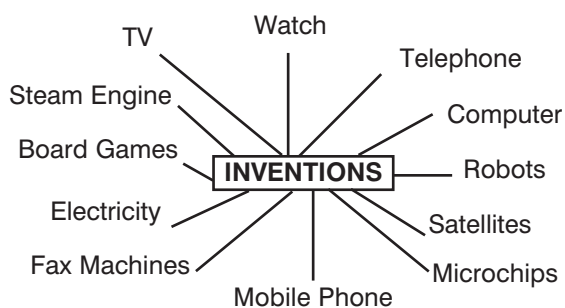
Unit 5

Part 1

➤ Warm-up Activities: Part 1 (p. 106)

(Suggested answers)

- Well, to become rich one has to work really hard for long hours, One can become rich by inventing something clever. Or, one could inherit wealth from a rich relative. Winning the lottery is another way of becoming rich.
- T writes the word **inventions** on the board, then asks Ss to think of as many words as they can related to the topic.



Then T asks Ss to think of verbs related to the topic and to derive the noun.

invent – inventor
 experiment – experimenter
 research – researcher
 discover – discoverer

(As an alternative T divides the class into two teams and asks them to think of words related to INVENTIONS. Each correct answer gets 1 point. The team with the most points is the winner.

e.g. Team A S1: watch

Team B S1: patent

Team A S2: telephone

Team B S2: experiment

- (Suggested answers)

The telephone – the wheel – TV – the mousetrap – cardboard drinks cartons – Monopoly.

Well, I think that the telephone is the most important invention because one can stay in touch with people that live far away. The wheel comes second because people were able to shorten distances and go to places that were too far to reach on foot. TV is another important

invention because we can see pictures from all over the world, see other people's cultures and be kept informed of the latest news. The mousetrap helped people a lot, but it's now a little old-fashioned because people use pesticides or more updated electrical devices to get rid of mice. Cardboard drinks cartons are quite useful because they are easily carried and stored. Monopoly is a successful board game which definitely made its inventor(s) rich. Lots of people enjoy playing it.

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| 1 financial | 6 amateurs |
| 2 carton | 7 original |
| 3 patent | 8 market |
| 4 thousand | 9 games |
| 5 inventors | 10 best-seller |

➤ Reading Task: Part 1 (pp. 106 - 107)

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 H | 3 A | 5 C | 7 I |
| 2 E | 4 G | 6 B | |

➤ Vocabulary Exercises: Part 1 (pp. 108 - 109)

- ease** – lack of difficulty
persistence – determination to continue trying to do sth
initial – first
time-consuming – taking up a lot of time
cardboard drinks carton – box made of cardboard in which drinks are contained
fortune – a lot of money
market – advertise a product in order to sell it
range – vary
vital – very important
profit margin – money made from sth after expenses have been paid
board game – game played with pieces and/or dice on a specially market board

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1 consultation | 4 pursuit |
| 2 patent | 5 overlooked |
| 3 amateur | |

- (Ss do Ex. 3 on their own, then T checks and elicits/explains the meaning of each distractor.)

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 D | 2 C | 3 B | 4 A |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|

- | |
|--|
| 1 A create (v) = to make sth original. |
| B produce (v) = to make sth in large quantities |
| C process (v) = to change raw materials using industrial methods |
| D manufacture (v) = to produce on a large scale, esp in a factory |

- 2 A **keep** (v) = to continue to have in one's possession
 B **gain** (v) = to obtain sth (e.g. gain experience)
 C **obtain** (v) = to get sth (e.g. obtain a visa)
 D **issue** (v) = to supply or provide sb with sth (e.g. to issue a visa for sb)
- 3 A **discover** (v) = to find sth (e.g. discover America)
 B **invent** (v) = to design sth new (e.g. invent the telephone)
 C **explore** (v) = to travel in order to learn about a place (e.g. explore the Antarctic)
 D **research** (v) = to study sth in order to discover new information
- 4 A **company** (n) = business organisation
 B **group** (n) = number of people/things put together
 C **team** (n) = group of people working together, esp in sport or business
 D **association** (n) = organisation

4 (Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- | | | |
|------------|----------|--------------|
| 1 to make | 5 time | 9 to stand |
| 2 the road | 6 board | 10 best |
| 3 profit | 7 a wide | 11 to obtain |
| 4 drinks | 8 well | 12 financial |

- 5**
- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1 flight | 5 detailed |
| 2 inventors | 6 construction |
| 3 Development | 7 creation |
| 4 carefully | 8 Fortunately |

- 6**
- | | | |
|--------------|-------------|----------|
| 1 economical | 3 amateur | 5 accept |
| 2 identical | 4 invention | 6 basic |

- 7**
- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1 rags-to-riches | 4 the game was up |
| 2 strike it rich | 5 name of the game |
| 3 fair game | |

- 8**
- | | | |
|---------|-----------|--------------|
| 1 for | 4 down on | 7 forward to |
| 2 after | 5 into | 8 up |
| 3 up | 6 through | |

- 9**
- | | |
|----------------------|------------------|
| 1 publicised | 5 commercials |
| 2 campaign | 6 hoardings |
| 3 advertising agency | 7 advertisements |
| 4 promote | |

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 1 (p. 109)**

- **Characteristics of a good invention:** originality, a market for the product, economical so that it will be taken up by a company, must be sth that can be developed, to sell for years to come.
- **Successful inventions:** Monopoly, Trivial Pursuit, cardboard drinks cartons.
- **Possible problems:** obtaining a patent, an advertising company must be found to develop and market the product.

• **(Suggested answer)**

I think that your unbreakable lightbulb is a fantastic invention, but without a good marketing campaign nobody will know about it. If I were you, I would contact a good advertising agency, and get them to promote the product. This could be done using both television commercials and posters around town. Don't forget that you need to get people to notice the advertisements, so it is important to make the advertising striking. The quality of the product is important, but in reality the advertising is what counts the most. Don't overlook the fact that some people are easily offended, so try and make sure that the campaign will appeal to everybody.

- (Before Ss are assigned it as written HW, T discusses all points Ss should include in their letter.)

(Suggested answer)

Dear Sir(s),

I was very interested to see your advertisement for a waste-powered car in the paper yesterday.

Could you please send me a copy of your free brochure?

Could you also give me some general information about the car, such as how many people it can carry, and how fast it can go? I would also be interested in knowing exactly what kinds of rubbish it will run on, and how much luggage it can carry. Could you let me know about the possibility of a test drive?

I have been very interested in the idea of environmentally-friendly transport for a few years now, and would therefore like information about any other products that you offer. If you could contact me as soon as possible, I would be most grateful.

Yours faithfully,

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 1 (p. 109)**

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 lots of, few | 6 much, hardly any |
| 2 a good deal of, little | 7 a few, some |
| 3 a lot of, great | 8 a little, some |
| 4 a few, several | 9 All, Lots of, A few |
| 5 no, much | 10 a few, several |

Part 2➤ **Warm-up Activities: (p. 110)****(Suggested answer)**

- This sign stands for recycling. The children are collecting rubbish from a beach in an attempt to keep the beaches clean. This is extremely important as we should all be environmentally aware and try to protect our environment.

• **(Suggested answers)**

recycled paper, bottle banks, recycling plants, can crushers, etc.

We can recycle things by: collecting tin cans for recycling, taking old newspapers to the collection point, re-using plastic bags etc.

- Julie Lewis is wearing an expensive-looking pair of **boots**. They are made of manmade materials. Recycling has become extremely popular in the **USA** in recent years. 65 per cent of **aluminium cans** are recycled, plus a quarter of paper and 20 per cent of glass. Taiwan buys used paper and Japan uses American scrap metal to make **cars**. A successful scheme has been operating in Palm Beach County. Rubbish is sorted out. Paper, glass and **plastic** are sold to recycling firms. Other materials are used to make soil, to grow fruit and **vegetables**. Of course, recycling can be expensive.

Manufacturers in Germany are trying to solve the problems at the production stage, by looking at how their goods are packaged. Soap powders are concentrated and toothpaste tubes are sold without **boxes**.

➤ **Reading Task: Part 2 (pp. 110 - 111)**

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 8 B (Ln 4 - 5) | 12 A (Ln 30 - 31) |
| 9 D (Ln 14) | 13 D (Ln 35 - 37) |
| 10 B (Ln 14) | 14 C (Ln 39) |
| 11 A (Ln 24) | 15 B (Ln 43 - 44) |

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 2 (pp. 112 - 113)**

- 1** **durable** – long lasting, hard-wearing.
ambition – strong desire
textile – material
single-handed – on one's own, without anyone's help
per capita – per person
scrap metal – metal that has been discarded
landfill sites – places where things are disposed of by burying them under the ground
disposal – act of getting rid of sth
alternatives – other methods of doing sth; options

- 2** 1 waste 6 packaged
 2 long-term 7 wrapping
 3 site 8 sorted
 4 desirable 9 entirely
 5 transport 10 good investment

- 3** 1 cupboard 3 glass 5 involve
 2 plastic 4 question 6 deflate

- 4** 1 solution 3 extremely
 2 ambitious 4 electricity

5 (Ss do Ex. 5 on their own then T checks answers and elicits/explains the meaning of each distractor.)

- 1 B 2 D 3 D 4 C 5 A 6 B
- 1 A **material** (n) = solid substance used to make sth
 B **substance** (n) = solid, powder or liquid with particular properties
 C **matter** (n) = physical part of the universe
 D **fabric** (n) = cloth
- 2 A **garbage** (n) = sth to be thrown away
 B **rubbish** (n) = sth to be thrown away
 C **litter** (n) = rubbish dropped outdoors
 D **toxic waste** (n) = poisonous substance produced by factories, power plants etc.
- 3 A **enclose** (v) = to surround with sth solid in order to protect or separate
 B **fold up** (v) = to make into a neat shape by bending
 C **package** (v) = to put a product into a box, bag etc. for sale
 D **wrap** (v) = to put paper, foil etc. around sth
- 4 A **councillor** (n) = member of local government
 B **counsellor** (n) = sb whose job is to give advice to people with problems
 C **adviser** (n) = sb who gives advice
 D **informer** (n) = sb who reports illegal activities to the police, government etc.

- 5 A **sort out** (phr v) = to separate into categories
 B **select** (v) = to choose
 C **separate** (v) = to divide
 D **segregate** (v) = to keep groups of people physically apart
- 6 A **pattern** (n) = particular form or design
 B **scheme** (n) = plan which is meant to solve a problem
 C **plot** (n) = illegal plan, ie. to overthrow a government
 D **system** (n) = way of doing sth

6 (*Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.*)

- | | | |
|---------------|------------|------------|
| 1 electricity | 4 landfill | 7 to power |
| 2 to run | 5 news | 8 soap |
| 3 to pose | 6 to make | 9 disposal |

7

1 rest	4 remain	7 pollution
2 remnants	5 leftovers	8 contamination
3 remaining	6 remainder	

8

1 environmentally aware	6 plastic
2 recycling	7 decompose
3 disposing of	8 products
4 aluminium	9 environment
5 bottle banks	

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 2 (p. 113)**

(Suggested answer)

- Recycling waste is important because it slows down the destruction of the environment. Everyone can help to recycle waste by taking their recyclable rubbish, like bottles, cans and old paper to recycling centres. That way, your recycled waste can be made into new products. You can also help by only buying recycled products, which will encourage the environmentally friendly companies, and force other companies to recycle more. When going to the shops, it's a good idea to take an old plastic bag with you, and reuse it. That way you won't need a new one.

- (*Ss work in pairs, T checks, then some pairs report to the class.*)

SA: I think that the most important step we can take towards saving the environment is to inform people about the dangers of environmental pollution.

SB: Yes, but it is also important to force big companies to stop making and using products which are bad for the environment.

SA: I agree, but the best way to do that is to get people to stop buying products which pollute the environment. That way companies will be forced to change their methods.

SB: You're right. The other thing to do is to get the government to impose regulations on products, like they did with CFC's in the 1980's.

SA: Yes, and to get the government to take action towards cleaning up litter and pollution which has already occurred.

SB: They've already done that in some big cities, but it needs to be done in towns as well, and in smaller villages.

- (*Before Ss are assigned it as written HW, T discusses the topic in class. After T has corrected the students' composition, he/she reads the best ones in class.*)

(Suggested answers)

Recycling is becoming an extremely important issue nowadays. Our planet's resources are being used up at an incredible speed at the moment, and we are destroying the environment with the rubbish and pollution produced by not recycling.

Firstly, it is uneconomical to throw away rubbish, both for ourselves, and for society in general. If you start recycling, you will be amazed at how much money you can save. Some centres actually pay you for the rubbish you bring in!

Recycling is also extremely important for the environment. It's amazing how many things can be recycled, saving both litter and the pollution resulting from making the products.

Also, the more people recycle, the more recycling centres will be encouraged to keep their good work going. Not only is this good for the environment, it is an interesting and profitable business to get into.

In general, I am very much in favour of recycling, and it's so easy that there is no excuse for not doing it.

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 2 (p. 113)**

- would find
- rise
- will rise
- will be flooded
- will become
- would be
- would not have been polluted
- would not have been released

Part 3

➤ Warm-up Activities: Part 3 (p. 114)

• (Suggested answers)

The pictures are of whales and a killer whale. Whales are mammals which live in the sea. They are extremely intelligent. I think it is cruel to keep animals in zoos, because they often become bored and unhappy, and their enclosures are often too small for them. However, it is sometimes necessary to keep animals in enclosures to make sure that they are well protected. Some endangered species have been saved from extinction in this way.

a T b F c F d T e F f T

➤ Reading Task: Part 3 (pp. 114 - 115)

16 D 17 B 18 G 19 C 20 E 21 A

➤ Vocabulary Exercises: Part 3 (p. 116 - 117)

1 frustration = state of annoyance caused by an inability to do sth.

constant = continuous

administrators = people running an organisation

marine = related to the sea

regional = concerning an administrative area

generated = made to exist

adjusting = becoming accustomed

release = act of setting sb/sth free

commission = group of experts with a particular purpose

2 1 captivity 3 attached 5 mood
2 aggression 4 native

3 1 species 4 captivity 7 natural
2 extinct 5 breed 8 confine
3 protect 6 released

4 (Ss have to memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

1 top 5 experts 9 procedure
2 to show 6 capable 10 under
3 sudden 7 to catch 11 desperate
4 to adjust 8 to cause 12 safety

5 (Ss do Ex. 5 on their own, then T checks answers and elicits/explains the meaning of each distractor.)

1 D 2 D 3 C 4 B

- 1 A **flee** (v) = to run away, usu from danger
B **liberate** (v) = to free from external limitations
C **emancipate** (v) = to liberate
D **release** (v) = to allow to leave
- 2 A **sign** (n) = indication that sth is a certain way or is happening
B **signal** (n) = action which is intended to give a message
C **symbol** (n) = sth which represents sth
D **gesture** (n) = sth done to express one's attitude or intentions
- 3 A **increase** (n) = growth in size, amount etc.
B **advancement** (n) = promotion in one's job
C **make progress** (exp) = to become better at sth
D **development** (n) = gradual growth and enhancement
- 4 A **generate** (v) = to produce, usu electricity
B **conduct** (v) = to allow electricity or heat to pass through
C **charge** (v) = to renew power, usu of a battery
D **discharge** (v) = to release from hospital or military; release waste

6 1 down 2 up 3 to 4 out 5 in

7 1 recently 4 wildly 7 reliant
2 continuing 5 scientists 8 independent
3 extinction 6 breath

➤ Follow-up Activities: Part 3 (p. 117)

- (Ss work in pairs. T checks, then some pairs report back to the class.)

(Suggested answers)

SA: In my opinion, Ulysses is tame, and used to being in captivity. If we released him into the wild, he just wouldn't survive.

SB: I disagree. Ulysses is obviously unhappy. His pool is far too small, and he needs a mate. He could help him adjust to the outside world, and he'd be much happier.

SA: I still insist that it would be best to keep him here. We can get him a mate, and build him a bigger pool. He's so good-natured we'd miss him if he left.

SB: Yes, but on the other hand he's been unhappy and aggressive lately, and he could become dangerous unless freed.

SA: Yes, but think how much money we will lose – Ulysses is our star attraction.

SB: Exactly, I quite agree. He is very famous, so think of all the positive publicity you would get by setting him free!

• **(Suggested answers)**

(T discusses the topic in class and elicits ideas from Ss, then he/she assigns it as written HW. T also refers Ss to the relevant theory on articles stressing the importance of formal language and style. After T has corrected Ss' compositions, he/she reads the best ones in class.)

All over the world, animals are kept in zoos and safari parks. Whether or not they should be is a very controversial topic. Although people might not realise it, zoos are not just there for our entertainment.

Zoos play a very important part in saving animals that would otherwise have become extinct. In the wild, some animals are in danger of extinction because their habitat is being destroyed, while others are hunted for their fur or just for sport. Zoos help to protect these animals. Zoos are also good, because they are educational.

On the other hand, zoos remove animals from their natural surroundings and place them in an environment which is unnatural. This can cause the animals to become bored and unhappy. Regulations are not strict enough in some countries, meaning that animals are often treated badly, and kept in small cages.

I think zoos should continue to exist in order to protect animals and to educate people about them. But I strongly believe that regulations should be made stricter, and zoos should make more of an effort to recreate animals' natural surroundings.

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 3 (p. 117)**

- | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 by | 3 by | 5 by |
| 2 with | 4 with | 6 with |

Part 4

➤ **Warm-up Activities: Part 4 (p. 118)**

(Suggested answers)

- Ice-skating, wrestling, swimming, polo, football, soccer, hockey, rowing, skiing, bicycle riding, bobsledding, car racing, canoeing, rafting, motor racing, sailboarding, sailing, windsurfing, surfing, rock climbing, etc.
- Well, the only things I didn't think of were supercircuits and aqua-aerobics. I think that supercircuits might have something to do with running or racing.
- Rock climbing also needs a lot of special equipment. I think that the most dangerous one is rock-climbing since many accidents occur and

lots of people have been injured or have even died in their attempt to reach a peak.

- a Chinese martial arts
- b strength, fitness
- c swimming pool
- d stressful
- e dancing, moving
- f strength, stamina
- g excluded
- h thrilling

➤ **Reading Task: Part 4 (pp. 118 - 119)**

- 22/23 C, E in any order
 24/25 A, D in any order
 26 B
 27 A
 28/29 F, G in any order
 30/31 A, D in any order
 32 H
 33/34 B, F in any order
 35 G

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 4 (p. 120)**

- 1 martial art** – self-defence technique
supple – flexible
crime-ridden – with a lot of crime
boost – increase
mental – of the mind
acquire – get
alternating – doing one thing and then another
impact – force with which two things collide
supplementing – adding to
consultation – meeting held to give advice or make a decision
meditation – deep thought
stamina – ability to keep going
sheer – total (used for emphasis)
peaks – highest points of mountains

2 (Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1 poorly-lit | 4 intensive | 7 stressful |
| 2 mental | 5 sheer | 8 insurance |
| 3 martial | 6 to get | 9 climbable |

3

1 characteristics	5 competitive
2 fitness	6 responsibility
3 strength	7 determination
4 dedication	

4

1 away	4 out	7 off
2 back	5 away	8 up
3 off	6 back	

➤ Follow-up Activities: Part 4 (p. 120)

Kung Fu: (benefits) learn self-defence, boost your confidence, acquire mental discipline, clearer mind.

Supercircuits: (benefits) improves strength and fitness **(drawbacks)** very demanding

Aqua-aerobics: (benefits) safe, fun, relaxing, keeps you looking good, feeling fit

T'ai Chi: (benefits) relieves stress, better health, improves level of strength and fitness

Ice Skating: (benefits) helps strength and stamina **(drawbacks)** expensive

Rowing: (benefits) helps strength and stamina

Football for over 40's: (benefits) older people can do it because they are skilled and experienced

Rock Climbing: (benefits) thrilling, exciting **(drawbacks)** dangerous

(Suggested answer)

- I'd prefer to do aqua-aerobics. In my opinion it is the best sport because it's completely safe. It's also fun and relaxing and keeps you fit. I wouldn't take up rock-climbing because it's very dangerous and stressful. You might get hurt. Sharing climbing equipment can also be dangerous because it might not fit you properly, and it is too expensive to buy your own.

➤ Grammar Check: Part 4 (p. 120)

- | | | |
|-----------|--------|----------|
| 1 every | 4 all | 7 either |
| 2 Neither | 5 None | |
| 3 whole | 6 both | |

Exam Focus – Use of English (p. 121)

➤ Part 2

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|------|------|
| 1 B | 4 C | 7 D | 10 A | 13 D |
| 2 A | 5 C | 8 B | 11 C | 14 C |
| 3 D | 6 B | 9 A | 12 D | 15 A |

➤ Prepositions (p. 121)

(Ss should memorise these prepositions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- | | | |
|---------|-------------|-------------|
| 1 on | 7 of/to | 13 of |
| 2 of/by | 8 of | 14 by/about |
| 3 at | 9 on | 15 in |
| 4 in | 10 with/for | 16 from |
| 5 in | 11 for | 17 from |
| 6 about | 12 in/on/to | 18 in |

Exam Focus – Listening (p. 122)

- | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 A | 3 A | 5 B | 7 B |
| 2 B | 4 B | 6 C | 8 B |

Part 1

You'll hear people talking in eight different situations. For questions 1 to 8, choose the best answer, A, B or C.

- 1** Listen to this conversation. What type of fortune-telling does the woman recommend?
- A palm reading
B tarot card reading
C tea leaf reading

Man: So, do you think I should have my fortune told?

Woman: Well, it depends on who you go to. I've tried just about everything – tea leaves, palmistry, tarot cards – but last year I went to this woman, and everything she said would happen actually did. I mean, moving house, my promotion, getting married – how could she know all that just from looking at my hand? So I think you should go to her ...

- 2** Listen to this conversation. What does the woman blame the man for?
- A forgetting to write a report
B forgetting to ring someone
C forgetting to have food delivered

Woman: I really never dreamed you'd let me down like this.

Man: Me? Didn't I ring everyone on the list? Didn't I write up the report for the board? And don't forget I organised the catering, which you forgot to even mention!

Woman: All right, all right, I'm just wondering why Mr Wilson didn't know about it. He claims he was never contacted.

- 3** You are going to hear part of a radio phone-in. What went wrong with the holiday described?
- A The hotel had not been built yet.
B They arrived at the wrong resort.
C The hotel was not the one they had booked.

Radio Speaker: And for those of you who have just tuned in this morning's phone-in is about holidays that went horribly wrong. We've just heard from Sarah in Kent, who arrived at a Spanish resort only to find the five-star hotel she and her husband had booked was nothing more than a building site. If you have a similar experience you'd like to share, ring us on ... (fade out)

- 4 Listen to this conversation. Where do the speakers decide to meet?

A the pub
B the station
C the bus stop

Man: So we're meeting at 9 o'clock – at the pub right?

Woman: Well, I don't know. Are you going home before?

Man: Probably not.

Woman: Because I'll be out of town all day – I have to go to that thing about bus stops at the country hall ...

Man: You're going by bus?

Woman: No, no. I'll be coming back on the seven ten – it gets in at eight twenty or so, and if you could ...

Man: Oh, right. I'll meet you on the platform then.

- 5 You'll hear someone talking on the phone. Who is he talking to?

A an electrician
B a plumber
C a glazier

Man: Erm, yeah, it's running constantly, and I'm just afraid 'cos there's a lot of wiring under there and if it actually leaks through then I don't know ... (pause) Yeah, yeah, it's right under the window ... (pause) right, I'll expect you this afternoon then ...

- 6 You'll hear someone speaking at a business meeting. What does the speaker want the staff to do?

A improve their products
B increase their production
C improve their advertising

Woman: What I'm trying to say is that we've dramatically improved our production, and the products themselves, but the fact is that our image with the public has stayed the same. The bottom line is that nobody seems to know about us, so what I'm suggesting is ... (fade out)

- 7 You will hear a woman talking to a gardener. What does she want him to do?

A mow the lawn
B replant a shrub
C clean the pond

Gardener: What was it you wanted doing then?

Woman: You know that bush with the white flowers, the – oh what's it called?

Gardener: The viburnun?

Woman: Yes, right. Well, it's so close to the pond that when the flowers fall, it makes the water dirty, and I'm sure it must make it difficult to keep the lawn nice, so I thought perhaps another spot ... on the other side of the lawn, or the back of the big bed?

Gardener: Right you are. The water in the small pond does need to be kept clean, no doubt about that ... (fade out)

- 8 You overhear this conversation in a department store. What is the man complaining about?

A the staff
B the prices
C the quality of the goods

Assistant: How can I help you, sir?

Man: Well, I bought this alarm clock from you yesterday and I, er -

Assistant: Oh dear, doesn't it work? We've had several complaints about that model.

Man: Well, it woke me up this morning so I suppose it's all right. It's just that I was looking in some shop window earlier today and I saw exactly the same clock for a lot less, and they offer free service, so I thought you might want to ...

Exam Focus – Speaking (p. 123)

➤ Part 2

(Suggested answers)

- **Picture A** is of some people playing polo, which is a game you play on horseback. **Picture B** is of a car race. They are both pictures of sports that are quite fast and dangerous.
- I would like to play polo, because I like riding horses and it is fun to play team games, although it can be quite dangerous. It is much safer than Formula One racing because it is very easy to crash while racing a car.
- People enjoy dangerous things because of the excitement they get from them. For some people, knowing that they could get hurt makes a sport more fun. Also, for people who work in an office all week dangerous sports can be exciting contrast to everyday life. Taking part in a sport can improve health and help you to relax.
- **Picture C** is of a sea-cow, while **picture D** is of a polar bear. They are both endangered species.
- Yes, there are some endangered species in my country. We used to have a lot of bears in the north of Greece, but now there are only about 100 left. Wolves, and some species of eagles are also endangered, along with sea-turtles.

- A lot of species become endangered because people hunt them. Organisations can be set up to protect these species from hunters, and governments can make it illegal for people to kill them. Another reason some species die out is that their habitats are destroyed. This could also be avoided by turning the areas into national parks.
- It is important to protect all species to prevent them from becoming endangered. If a species dies out, it can have disastrous effects on the environment, because the animals that rely on that species for food will have nothing to eat, and will also die as a consequence.
- I have never taken part in a conservation project, but I think it must be a very interesting thing to do. It would be rewarding as well, to know that your work is helping to protect endangered species, or to preserve an area of countryside.

Exam Focus – Writing (p. 124)

Reports

A report has to follow the characteristic report format with headings. It should be clearly organised and presented and the tone should be formal. It should **not be written like a letter** and this is something that T has to point out to Ss. T has to prepare Ss to write a proper report as it is illustrated on pp. 124-131. However, if Ss fail to follow the characteristic report format or their report sounds a bit informal they will not necessarily fail the FCE exam.

- 1**
- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1 majority | 5 A small number |
| 2 by far the largest | 6 A significant number |
| 3 minority | 7 percent |
| 4 large proportion | 8 substantial |

- 2** 1 c 2 e 3 a 4 d 5 b

3 (Suggested answers)

- 1 ... that more and more people are realising the danger of smoking.
- 2 ... that many young people under 25 enjoy travelling to other countries.
- 3 ... that people believe brand name colas taste better.
- 4 ... that marriage is something very few couples rush into.
- 5 ... that more and more people are becoming addicted to computer games.

- 4** 1 C 2 A 3 E 4 D 5 B

5 (Suggested answers)

- 1 ... the fact that 7 out of 10 people travel by train.
- 2 ... the fact that 67% of all offices are smoke-free zones.
- 3 ... the fact that supermarket sales of beer have increased by 300%.
- 4 ... the fact that 52% of video rentals are horror films.
- 5 ... the fact that 9 out of 10 people wear well-known brand of jeans.

6 (If Ss have difficulty doing Ex. 6, T should help them by giving information as shown in the suggested answer.)

(Suggested answers)

- 1 The purpose of this assessment is ...
- 2 This survey was conducted to ...
- 3 Tickets at 10% discount are offered to students.
- 4 A fax machine is available (for use) in the executive lounge.
- 5 Use of the facilities is available to all visitors.../ Facilities are available for use by all visitors
- 6 A swimming pool is provided for (use by) guests./Provided you're a guest, you can use the swimming pool.
- 7 Your bags will be carried to your room by the hotel porter.
- 8 This hotel offers a continental breakfast (to its guests).
- 9 It is advised that this ferry service be used.
- 10 The results of the survey show ...

7 (Suggested answers)

- 2 complained – Some people **complained** that buses were never on time.
- 3 claimed – Many people **claimed** that the service wasn't very good.
- 4 protested – Many people **protested** that they didn't want a prison in their town.
- 5 explained – The officials **explained** that the bus timetable had been changed.
- 6 admitted – They **admitted** that conditions were very poor.
- 7 promised – They police official **promised** that he would do everything he could to improve the situation.

- 8 a**
- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 Model 1 | 4 Model 1 | 7 Model 1 |
| 2 Model 1 | 5 Model 2 | 8 Model 1 |
| 3 Model 2 | 6 Model 1 | 9 Model 2 |

(T should point out the good layout of Model 1 in contrast with that of Model 2).

b Facts:

- 70% of hotels surveyed offer these facilities.
- Nearly all the hotels surveyed provide room service, laundry service and a free maid service.
- Only 3% of hotels surveyed offer free use of an exercise room.
- 80% of hotels have outdoor pools and 4% of hotels have indoor and outdoor facilities.
- All of the hotels surveyed have a lounge, bar area and restaurant.
- The average price for a double room is £85 – £120 per night.
- Only 14% of the hotels include breakfast in the basic price.

Generalisations:

- The majority of hotels are well-equipped.
- Usual services are provided by most of the hotels.
- Free exercise facilities aren't usually provided.
- Swimming facilities are readily available.
- Access to food and drink is considered important.
- Price-range of Maytown's hotels is quite high.
- On the whole, the existing hotels are well-equipped.

- 9** Model 1 is **good because** it is divided into sub-headings. The purpose and content of the report is clearly stated in the introduction. Each point is summarised giving both positive and negative aspects. Appropriate linking words and the passive voice are used. The conclusion includes a general assessment and recommendation.

Model 2 is **bad because** its style is very personal and it includes irrelevant details. The use of short forms is apparent and it is not objective. The passive voice is not used and there are no sub-headings. The paragraphs are poorly structured.

Linking words: the purpose of, although, in fact, consisting of, however, also, on the face of it, taking everything into account.

Good points

- The campsite is easily accessible to customers arriving by road or rail.
- It offers an outstanding view.
- There is a large shower block.
- There is a bus service to the village.
- There is a launderette, a restaurant and a bar.

Bad points

- The site is not protected from the wind and can become quite chilly in the evenings.
- The cleanliness of the shower and toilet blocks is not of an acceptable standard.
- The bus service tends to be inconvenient.
- The restaurant and bar are expensive.

10 1 C 2 D 3 A 4 E 5 B

11 (Suggested answers)

- 1 ... the thin suspect in police custody could not have attacked me.
- 2 ... the car radio may have been stolen at that time.
- 3 ... they could have some connection to the bombing.
- 4 ... he could have been the person who broke into their house.
- 5 ... the robber could have entered through that door.

12 evidence: They are about 22 years old.

hypothesis: ... so they could have been students.

evidence: ... they came running out without waiting to fill their bag with money.

hypothesis: I think they must have panicked at that point

13 The small town of Brindon was shaken awake at 3.20 am this morning when a Delta Airlines 757 aircraft crash-landed in the grounds of the local primary school.

Residents of the area rushed from their homes, as fire and rescue teams arrived at the scene.

At present, 215 passengers and crew have been rescued from the aircraft. A further 82 remain trapped inside due to the fact that the aircraft is lying on its side, and most exits are blocked. Due to the time and location of the crash, there were fortunately no casualties outside the aeroplane, but there was serious damage to the school and surrounding area.

Chief Fire Officer, Sergeant Ben Williams said, 'We are using all available manpower to free the crew and passengers still in the wreckage. Two of our men are in the craft trying to keep morale up among the injured while we work at getting them out.' An extensive investigation is already underway into the cause of the crash and details will be published as they become available.

Purpose of first paragraph: to summarise the event – time, place and people involved.

Purpose of second paragraph: to describe the main event and people involved and give detailed facts.

Purpose of third paragraph: to note down comments and make reference to future developments.

14 a Model A is a witness statement and Model B is a news report.

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 Model B | 3 Model A | 5 Model B |
| 2 Model A | 4 Model B | 6 Model A |

b Model 1

- The purpose of the first paragraph is to set the scene – time, place and people involved in the event.
- The purpose of the second paragraph is to describe the main events and people involved: states hypothesis and evidence.
- The purpose of the third paragraph is to describe the final result of the incident.

Model 2

- The purpose of the first paragraph is to summarise the event – time, place and people involved.
- The purpose of the second paragraph is to describe the main events and the people involved and give detailed facts.
- The purpose of the third paragraph is to give comments and refer to any future developments.

15 (Suggested answers)

- Paragraph 1 – Introduction
- Paragraph 2 – Location
- Paragraph 3 – Price
- Paragraph 4 – Atmosphere/Decor
- Paragraph 5 – Facilities
- Paragraph 6 – Conclusion

16 (Suggested answer)

I was sitting watching TV when I heard a sound coming from the back of the house, so I got up and went to see what it was.

I walked into the kitchen and saw that the window was broken. Then something very heavy hit me from behind. I fell forwards onto the floor and then tried to turn my head to see who had hit me.

There was a young man with long hair standing over me, but before I could get a good look at him he kicked me in the chest and then again in the

face. I was ready to pass out but the man forced me to tell him where I kept my jewellery and went upstairs to get it. When he came back down he had all my jewellery, plus £150 which I had hidden in my jewellery box.

I then passed out, and the next thing I knew I was in an ambulance on the way to hospital.

17 (Suggested answers)

1 News report

Outline:

Introduction – summary of events and people involved.

Main body – detailed description of event and people involved.

Concluding paragraph – inclusion of any comments and reference to future events or developments.

Style should be formal without sub-headings.

2 News report (outline as above)

3 Assessing good and bad points.

Outline:

Introduction – content and purpose of report stated

Main body – summary of each point, giving both positive and negative aspects

Conclusion – general assessment and recommendation

Style should be formal with sub-headings.

4 Analysing a survey

Outline:

Introduction – content and purpose of report stated

Main body – information summarised under suitable sub-headings

Conclusion – recommendations or general conclusion made

Style should be formal with sub-headings.

5 Witness statement

Outline:

Introduction – set the scene – time, place, people

Main body – description of main events and people involved, hypothesis and evidence stated

Conclusion – the final result of the incident

Style should be informal without sub-headings.

6 Assessing good and bad points (Outline as for no. 3)

TOPICS

1 (Suggested answer)

Hurricane Georgina hit Jamaica yesterday causing damage estimated at over \$20 million and making hundreds of families homeless.

The hurricane had been forecast and locals had been warned, but nobody could have been prepared for the extent of the damage. A state of emergency has been declared as the island has come to a complete standstill. Public services have been thrown into chaos as only the northern branch of National Bank and two telephone exchanges remain standing.

Almost a month before the hurricane hit Jamaica, locals began preparing emergency shelters with copious amounts of dry food and water. Even though locals knew where the temporary accommodation was, Hurricane Georgina hit so fast that few were able to reach it in time.

Jamaican authorities will begin a massive clean-up operation within the next few days, which is expected to take at least three months to complete.

2 (Suggested answer)

Juventus took on Manchester United yesterday to prove once again that they were capable of defeating them for the third year in a row. The match, which took place at home, was watched by a stadium packed with an estimated 30,000 loyal fans eager to watch their team win.

By half time, Ronaldo was proving once again what an outstanding player he is. In a matter of twenty minutes he had scored two of the most spectacular goals of the season, taking his team to the European Cup Final.

Organisers of the match were delighted with the fans' behaviour and the police made only one arrest. Police believe that the calm atmosphere was due to the fact that they had obtained a court order to ban the sale of any alcohol in the area.

This match just goes to prove how successful well-organised events can be. Thanks to cooperation between the police, stadium staff and fans, football was the focus of the day rather than violence, as has been the case in previous matches.

3 (Suggested answer)

To: J. Thomas
From: M. Smith
Subject: 'Air Madrid' services

This report has been written to assess the service I received on a recent flight with the airline 'Air Madrid.' Points covered include the treatment I received, the standard of the food served on the flight, and in-flight entertainment.

Treatment

Most airline staff, both on the ground and on board the plane, were polite and helpful. However, one flight attendant's behaviour left a lot to be desired. She was extremely rude to several passengers and unwilling to help or serve them.

Food

The quality of the food served on the flight was outstanding, the only exception being the dessert.

In-flight entertainment

Two films were shown during the flight, both being family entertainment suitable for all ages. There is also a music channel available for passengers, but this was not particularly entertaining.

Conclusion

I think that Madrid Air does offer a fairly good service to passengers, but that staff should be better trained in customer service. In-flight entertainment was satisfactory, but could be improved.

4 (Suggested answer)

To: J. Smith
From: P. Jones
Subject: Survey on people holidaying abroad

Introduction

This report was written to analyse the result of a recent survey into the number of people who take holidays abroad every summer. Information was obtained from major travel agents throughout the country.

Air Fares

On the whole, there has been a steady increase in people travelling abroad over the last five years. Increased competition between charter airlines has led to a drop in air fares, which is the reason why students and young families have contributed to 65% of the growing travel market.

Scheduled airlines are also dropping their fares, making it possible for people to travel to more distant destinations.

Hotels

European hotels in particular have become more accommodating to families, offering discounts or free accommodation to children. Hotel bookings were up by almost 30% this summer in Greece, Spain and Italy due to well-planned family packages.

Conclusion

The survey clearly shows that the trend towards foreign holidays is increasing and will continue to increase due to the now recognised need for cheaper airfares, updated hotel services and improved facilities for children.

5 (Suggested answer)

It was about 3.00 p.m. on Saturday afternoon when the accident happened. I pulled up at the traffic lights half way down Hamilton Avenue and waited for them to turn to green.

I wasn't really paying much attention to what was going on outside because I was trying to calm my two children down. They were fighting in the back seat and I couldn't concentrate. Suddenly, however, a blue volkswagon Beetle screeched round the corner and smashed right into us. It pushed my car right onto the pavement because it was going so fast. There were two young boys in the car and when I got out to see if they were all right I could smell that they had been drinking, and there were beer cans all over the floor. When I saw the driver trying to start the engine I quickly took the car keys out of the ignition so that they couldn't drive away.

Luckily someone saw what had happened and called the police, who soon arrived. No one was hurt, but it could have been much more serious if we hadn't all been wearing seatbelts.

6 (Suggested answer)

To: P. Hones
From: S. Jefferson
Subject: Facilities at a New Leisure Centre

This report was requested by Perth High School to assess the facilities at Bells Leisure Centre and its suitability for our staff.

Location

The centre has been built as an addition to Norry Miller Park which is convenient for all local bus routes and has underground stations on either side. It is about 10 minutes by bus from the school which makes it easily accessible in school hours. However, bus and tube services do not pass the park after 6 p.m. which makes it difficult to get to in the evening.

Facilities

The centre houses an Olympic-size swimming pool, four tennis courts, two squash courts, a fully-equipped gym, three trampolines, aerobics classes, a sauna, excellent shower and changing rooms and a juice bar and café. There are trained instructors on hand who are willing to take groups for swimming, tennis, and squash lessons between Mondays and Fridays.

Fees

There is an annual membership of £30 which is reduced to £15 for students. A minimum charge of £1 is then paid for each facility used. However, groups pay a set fee of £20 per member per year with no additional charge.

Conclusion

The centre offers excellent facilities and is within easy reach of the company. The fees are a little high for a private member, but it is recommended that we take advantage of the group price and register immediately.

Unit 6

Part 1

➤ Warm-up Activities: Part 1 (p. 132)

• (Suggested answers)

Although a lot of people think that Gypsies come from Egypt originally, they really come from India. There are gypsies in my country. They travel about in large groups, and live in tents and caravans. They often get married very young, and have a lot of children. People do not make them feel welcome. I think that they should be treated with more respect, and that the government should help them to live their lives in our country.

(T should revise cardinal/ordinal numbers e.g. 2,000,000 two million ... before Ss do the listening exercise. See Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary Appendix 4 Numerical Expressions.)

- | | | | | | | |
|-----|------|------|------|------------|-----------|------|
| • a | 1176 | c | 10th | e | 2 million | |
| | b | 13th | d | 15 million | f | 16th |

➤ Reading Task: Part 1 (pp. 132 - 133)

- 1 D 2 H 3 A 4 C 5 G 6 B

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 1 (pp. 134 - 135)**

- 1**
- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1 maintain | 5 conceal |
| 2 modifications | 6 distrust of |
| 3 persecution | 7 reveal |
| 4 descendant | 8 reference to |

2 (Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- | | | |
|----------|--------------|--------------|
| 1 racing | 4 to pick up | 7 customs |
| 2 long | 5 to move on | 8 the saying |
| 3 attend | 6 to work | 9 gypsy |

- 3**
- | | | |
|----------------|-----------|---------------|
| 1 central | 3 leaders | 5 cultivation |
| 2 civilisation | 4 solely | |

- 4** 1 conceal 2 deal 3 attend 4 trailers

5 (Ss do Ex. 5 on their own, then T elicits/explains the meaning of each distractor.)

- 1 C 2 A 3 C 4 A 5 C 6 D

- 1**
- A **error** (n) = something which is wrong
 B **fault** (n) = mistake or a weakness (often referring to behaviour or character)
 C **by mistake** (n) = accidentally
 D **oversight** (n) = lack of success in noticing or doing sth
- 2**
- A **specific** (adj) = exact and detailed
 B **chief** (adj) = most important
 C **main** (adj) = principle person or thing
 D **characteristic** (adj) = typical of sb/sth
- 3**
- A **handling** (n) = the way sth or sb is dealt with
 B **treatment** (n) = the way of acting towards or dealing with sb/sth
 C **behaviour** (n) = the way sb acts towards other people
 D **position** (n) = view; opinion
- 4**
- A **display** (n) = act of showing sth
 B **exhibition** (n) = collection of objects that is shown to the public
 C **show** (n) = form of public entertainment
 D **performance** (n) = act of performing for entertainment
- 5**
- A **demonstrate** (v) = to show sth by giving proof/evidence
 B **uncover** (v) = to find out sth unknown or sth kept secret
 C **reveal** (v) = to make known (truth, facts, secrets etc.)
 D **expose** (v) = to make known (usu a guilty person or action)

- 6**
- A **attraction** (n) = act of attracting sb/sth
 B **appeal** (n) = quality of attractiveness
 C **charm** (n) = power to attract or fascinate people
 D **fascination** (n) = very strong appeal

- 6 a**
- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1 civilisation | 3 custom |
| 2 culture | 4 tradition |

- b**
- | | |
|---------|-----------|
| 1 race | 3 game |
| 2 match | 4 contest |

- c**
- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1 event | 3 occasion |
| 2 incident | 4 episode |

- d**
- | | |
|--------|------------|
| 1 fair | 3 festival |
| 2 gala | 4 bazaar |

- 7**
- | | | |
|------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1 off | 4 by | 7 up with |
| 2 by/round | 5 down with | 8 out |
| 3 across | 6 into | |

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 1 (p. 135)**

• **(Suggested answers)**

They come from India, their customs are rarely revealed, they attend fairs, they distrust outsiders, they've got a unique nomadic lifestyle.

- (Ss work in pairs. T checks round the class then he/she asks some pairs to report to the class.)

SA: A sportsman's life is centred around his training schedule, which takes up several hours of each day.

SB: Yes. And as well as training he has to keep to a strict diet. His social life tends to be very restricted because of training and competitions.

SA: But successful sportsmen can afford luxurious lifestyles. Many of *them* are millionaires etc.

SA: A political leader such as Bill Clinton has very little time to himself. He probably has a lot of meetings and TV interviews.

SB: Life in politics is very stressful and a politician often has little time for personal life.

SA: However it is a well paid, high status career etc.

SA: This businessman probably leads a very stressful life. He almost certainly works very long hours and doesn't have much time to spend with his family.

SB: He probably even works on the train while commuting to work.

SA: Yes ... and carries a mobile phone and a laptop computer etc.

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 1 (p. 135)**

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1 as, as, like | 5 like, as, like |
| 2 like, as | 6 As, like, like |
| 3 as, as, as | 7 as, like, as |
| 4 as, as, as | 8 as, as, like |

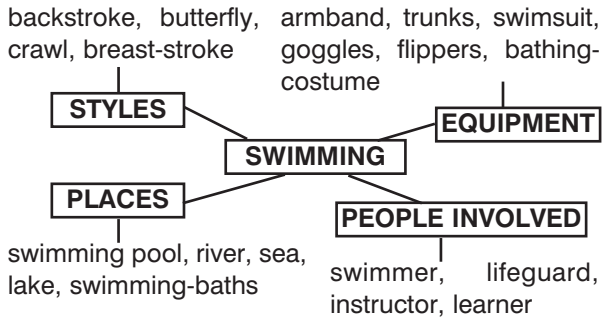
Part 2

➤ **Warm-up Activities: Part 2 (p. 136)**

• **(Suggested answers)**

Yes, I can swim. I can swim very well because I learnt when I was five. I enjoy swimming, and it is good exercise. Being able to swim is important: it could save your life in a shipwreck, or you could save somebody else from drowning.

- (T draws the following spidergram on the board and writes down some words related to the topic (swimming) then T asks Ss to come up with words related to each point.)



- a Because she couldn't swim.
- b Three times.
- c She went to a hypnotherapist.
- d At the pool of her local sports centre.

➤ **Reading Task: Part 2 (pp. 136 - 137)**

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 7 B (Ln 1 - 2) | 11 C (Ln 25 - 28) |
| 8 B (Ln 6 - 7) | 12 B (Ln 38 - 39) |
| 9 A (Ln 13) | 13 C (Ln 45) |
| 10 D (Ln 22 - 23) | |

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 2 (pp. 138 - 139)**

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1 armbands | 6 float |
| 2 bullied | 7 instructor |
| 3 leaflet | 8 defeated |
| 4 drowned | 9 achieved |
| 5 subconscious | 10 inspired |

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 2 1 fully grown | 7 to book |
| 2 deeply | 8 to want |
| 3 to enrol | 9 panic |
| 4 birthday | 10 to shake |
| 5 my heart | 11 to overcome |
| 6 to give | 12 out of |

3 (Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- | | | | |
|---------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1 aback | 3 in | 5 off | 7 over |
| 2 after | 4 for | 6 on | 8 up |

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 4 1 frightening | 5 knowledgeable |
| 2 courageous | 6 naturally |
| 3 difficulty | 7 undoubtedly |
| 4 instructor | 8 rewarding |

- | | | |
|-----------------|-----------|---------|
| 5 a 1 professor | 3 teacher | 5 coach |
| 2 instructor | 4 trainer | |

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|
| b 1 enrolled | 3 subscribed | 5 recruited |
| 2 registered | 4 enlisted | 6 recorded |

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 6 1 black and blue | 4 scream blue murder |
| 2 once in a blue moon | 5 the blues |
| 3 out of the blue | |

7 (Ss read the text of Ex. 7 once before attempting to fill in the blanks.)

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 swim | 7 back-stroke |
| 2 relax | 8 goggles |
| 3 swimming pool | 9 flippers |
| 4 float | 10 diving |
| 5 splashing | 11 diving board |
| 6 breast-stroke | 12 lifeguard |

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 2 (p. 89)**

(Suggested answers)

- Possible Title: Getting on Swimmngly

Useful equipment: armbands, buoyancy aid, float

How to treat the learner: patiently, don't bully, stay in pool with them

Possible problems: learner may panic suddenly, progress may be slow

If you want to learn how to swim, you should definitely take proper lessons. Don't worry if progress is slow, and try not to panic when you are in the water. If you're learning in a pool, you ought to wear goggles to stop the chlorine getting in your eyes. It would be best not to swim unsupervised until you feel really confident in the water.

(Suggested answers)

- Dear Sue,

I was thrilled to hear in your last letter that you have finally decided to learn how to swim. Has it got anything to do with the holiday Dave wanted to take you on round the Greek islands?

The first time you go to the pool you will probably feel quite scared. Don't worry though because everything will be fine. You ought to wear a swimming costume rather than a bikini. You'll feel more comfortable in it ... and if I were you, I would buy a pair of swimming goggles so that the chlorine in the water doesn't hurt your eyes.

You are not supposed to swim after a meal in case you get stomach cramps, so it would be best not to eat for at least an hour beforehand.

Incidentally, you should contact Shona at the Eastwood Leisure Centre. She gives private lessons to adults who want to learn to swim and she seems very nice and patient. I think she charges £8 per hour, but I'm sure it would be worth it, as she stays in the pool with you rather than shouting orders from the side.

Good luck, and try not to panic.

Love,
Ann

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 2 (p. 139)**

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 when, has finished | 4 When, will you help |
| 2 if, have | 5 If, will meet |
| 3 if, will phone | |

Part 3➤ **Warm-up Activities: Part 3 (p. 140)**

- (Suggested answers)**

All these pictures represent success and wealth: lots of money and business deals. Being a millionaire would mean you could do many things without worrying about being able to afford it. Wealth and success can be a good thing as long as you can cope with the power and influence it often affords you, and that you don't allow your personality to be adversely affected.

- a F b T c T d T e F f F

➤ **Reading Task: Part 3 (pp. 140 - 141)**

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 14 C | 16 A | 18 B | 20 D |
| 15 H | 17 G | 19 I | |

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 3 (pp. 142 - 143)**

- | | | |
|----------|----------------|------------------|
| 1 | 1 entrepreneur | 6 motivation |
| | 2 lacks | 7 Discrimination |
| | 3 awkward | 8 expulsion |
| | 4 executive | 9 originated |
| | 5 focus | 10 vacancy |

- 2** (Ss do Ex. 2 on their own, then T elicits/explains the meaning of all distractors.)

- | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | B | 2 | A | 3 | D | 4 | B | 5 | C | 6 | A |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
- 1 A **early** (adj) = before the usual time
 B **the former** (adj) = the first of two things, places etc. mentioned
 C **previous** (adj) = before
 D **premature** (adj) = before the expected time
- 2 A **concentrate (on)** (v) = to give total attention to
 B **consider** (v) = to think about sth (with the aim of making a decision)
 C **calculate** (v) = to judge the amount or cost of something
 D **comprehend** (v) = to understand
- 3 A **condition** (n) = state
 B **mark** (n) = action which represents a feeling or characteristic
 C **angle** (n) = particular viewpoint on a problem or issue
 D **quality** (n) = characteristic, usu good
- 4 A **conference** (n) = meeting or series of meetings on a particular subject
 B **course** (n) = series of lessons on a particular subject
 C **session** (n) = period of time spent doing sth
 D **lesson** (n) = period of time during which one is taught (usu at school)
- 5 A **fail** (v) = not to succeed
 B **lose** (v) = not to succeed (in a competition)
 C **lack** (v) = not to have or contain something
 D **miss** (v) = to omit something
- 6 A **prosperous** (adj) = successful; money-making
 B **fortunate** (adj) = lucky
 C **well off** (adj) = rich
 D **costly** (adj) = expensive

- 3**
- | | | |
|----------|-----------|------------|
| a | 1 damage | 3 disaster |
| | 2 tragedy | 4 ruin |
| b | 1 earns | 3 gains |
| | 2 wins | 4 beats |

- 4** 1 successful 7 helpful
 2 musical 8 compassionate
 3 performances 9 famous
 4 achievements 10 powerful
 5 determination 11 commitment
 6 ability 12 dedication
- 5** 1 at 3 around 5 through 7 away
 2 off 4 over 6 down 8 on
- 6** 1 none of her business
 2 business is business
 3 do business with
 4 got down to business
 5 mind your own business
- 7** 1 easy money
 2 to be rolling money/to have money to burn
 3 to make money
 4 to get their money's worth
 5 to have money to burn
 6 spend money like water

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 3 (p. 143)**

- **The Teachers:** 'Gaining knowledge is all you need to do well in society.'
- Dr. Raymond Bull:** 'Good looks make early life easier. Also, people expect a good-looking person to be kinder and more efficient.'
- Professor Cooper:** Sixty percent of successful entrepreneurs left school early, either due to expulsion or boredom.'
- Michael Breen:** 'Success does not happen by accident. Successful people are those who, when something doesn't work, try something else.'

(Suggested answer)

I agree with Michael Breen's point of view because I strongly believe that things do not happen on their own and that one should fight one's way through obstacles and try various ways to reach one's targets.

- **(Suggested answer)**

Very few people become successful through luck alone according to Michael Breen, a man who runs courses on being successful. While some people are born wealthy, making money is often a question of attitude and effort. One thing that often singles out successful people is their ability to concentrate on one thing properly, instead of trying to do several things at once. A job well done gives personal satisfaction, which is an essential factor for success.

Of course, success is always a combination of things. It can be due to looks, efficiency, determination, or many other aspects. Probably the most important quality is being likeable and able to get on with other people.

The important thing to remember, is that success does not just happen by accident. You can't just sit around waiting for it to happen to you, you have to go out and really look for it!

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 3 (p. 143)**

All 'Southern Travel's' buses will be refurbished this year. Twenty brand new models have also been ordered. Passengers will be provided with a high standard of luxury and comfort. The buses will be used more often once services are improved by Southern Travel. It should be noted by commuters that the new buses were expected to be received by December. Due to a delay, they will be delivered in February.

Part 4

➤ **Warm-up Activities: Part 4 (p. 144)**

- **(Suggested answers)**

Well, yes I do read magazines. I usually read magazines about computers because I'm interested in computers and want to be kept informed of the latest news about them. Kerpow! might be a magazine about music. I think *Metropolitan Woman* is about fashion, working women and women's problems. *Sparkle* might be a comic magazine, *Tech-knowledge* is definitely about technology. *Gaming* must be about sports. *Home Maker* must be about how to make things for your house. Finally, *Glamorous You* must be about beauty and fashion.

- 1 i 3 h 5 j 7 b
 2 c 4 e 6 a

➤ **Reading Task: Part 4 (pp. 144 - 145)**

- | | | | |
|-------|-------------------|-------|-------------------|
| 21 | F | 28 | E |
| 22 | E | 29 | C |
| 23 | F | 30 | B |
| 24 | A | 31/32 | B, G in any order |
| 25 | D | 33/34 | A, C in any order |
| 26/27 | B, G in any order | 35 | C |

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 4 (p. 146)**

- 1** **gigs** – live concerts or performances
compilations – collections of songs from different musicians
challenging – needing effort and determination
rough and tumble – situation where you have to try hard to get what you want
handy hints – useful tips
trim – neat and attractive
definitive – the most complete of this kind
fixtures – sports events
write-ups – reviews
stacks – vast amounts of
treasure-trove – a very good source of sth
innovations – new methods/inventions
issue – copy of a magazine
inspiration – motivation; stimulus

- 2** (*Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.*)

1 natural	7 to tune into
2 comic	8 caring
3 forthcoming	9 to subscribe
4 to apply	10 technological
5 handy	11 to enter
6 problem	12 to spend

- 3** (*T elicits from Ss various types of magazines and writes them on the board. Then Ss do Ex. 3.*)

(Suggested answers)

D-I-Y Magazine – household hints, tips on growing plants

Fashion Magazine – agony aunt

Sports Magazine – review of a match, fixture lists

Music Magazine – the top ten, competitions

Computer/Technology Magazine – article about software

Sports/Gambling – fixture lists, review of a match

Children's Comic – comic strips, puzzles, competitions

Natural History Magazine – news story about ecological disaster

Women's Magazine – household hints, recipes, agony aunt, horoscopes

Gardening Magazine – tips on growing plants

- 4** 1 down 3 about 5 round
 2 back 4 out

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 4 (p. 146)**

• **(Suggested answers)**

Kerpow!	interview with popstars competitions information about gigs etc
MW	make up advice keep-fit child care advice
Sparkle	comic strips puzzles and games
Tech-Knowledge Gaming	new technology sports news interviews with sports-stars
Home-Maker	D-I-Y advice
Glamorous You	beauty advice keep fit fashion

I would like to buy 'Glamorous You' because I like to keep fit and to read about new styles and trends. My sister would like 'Metropolitan Woman' because she's just had a baby and would be interested in any advice for new mothers. I think that my grandfather would buy 'Gaming' as he follows all kinds of sports avidly. My mother would probably buy 'Tech-Knowledge' because she's interested in the Internet and how it could benefit her at work. Ian, my uncle, is a do-it-yourself enthusiast so he might like to buy 'Home-Maker' for himself and 'Sparkle' for his 8 year-old son to encourage him to read.

- For a magazine to be popular with people of my age, it should really include information about style, health, technology and music. Horoscopes and problem pages normally go down well too.
- From: John Tydhurst
To: Mr Wilson
Subject: Magazine Sales – Star Publications

Introduction

The aim of this report is to analyse the results of a survey carried out regarding the magazines published by our company.

Types

As other national surveys have shown, specialised magazines are more popular than general ones. This is demonstrated by the fact that of the 2,000 people surveyed, 80% said they regularly bought 'Tech-knowledge', 'Gaming', and 'Homecraft', while only 20% bought 'Homemaker' and 'Kerpow'. An exception to this trend was our children's magazine, 'Sparkle', which was bought by nearly half of those interviewed.

Age Groups

The survey showed that the 30 – 40 age group bought far more magazines than any other group, at nearly 60%. Second was the 20 – 30 age group, at 40%. The lowest magazine sales appeared in the 10 – 20 age group. This is shown by the fact that ‘Kerpow’ sells the least of all our magazines, at 5% of total sales.

Price

Price had very little influence on magazine sales according to our survey. 70% claimed that they considered their own interests first, and price second or not at all.

Recommendations

Based on the results of the survey, I would suggest that we concentrate on the more specialised magazines and consider phasing out the least popular, such as ‘Kerpow’ and ‘Homemaker’.

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 4 (p. 146)**

- | | | | |
|------|----------|--------|-----------|
| 1 so | 3 such a | 5 such | 7 such an |
| 2 so | 4 so | 6 such | |

Exam Focus – Use of English (p. 147)➤ **Part 2**

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------|
| 1 what | 9 way |
| 2 got/achieved/gained | 10 much/far |
| 3 less/from | 11 than |
| 4 about | 12 how |
| 5 with | 13 worth |
| 6 are/get/become | 14 on |
| 7 longer | 15 yourself |
| 8 by/through | |

➤ **Part 3**

- 1 ... has to have her hair ...
- 2 ... had his bicycle stolen ...
- 3 ... have been divided into ...
- 4 ... was made to confess ...
- 5 ... are only a few courses ...
- 6 ... is said to save ...
- 7 ... make up his mind ...
- 8 ... is as intelligent as ...
- 9 ... aware of the importance ...
- 10 ... about doesn't make sense ...

➤ **Prepositions**

- | | | |
|------------|-----------------|----------|
| 1 in | 10 of/about | 19 of |
| 2 at | 11 on | 20 on |
| 3 of | 12 for | 21 in |
| 4 to | 13 on | 22 of |
| 5 on | 14 in/on/at/for | 23 on |
| 6 for | 15 with | 24 on |
| 7 of/about | 16 of | 25 about |
| 8 of | 17 with | |
| 9 of | 18 for | |

Exam Focus – Listening (p. 148)

- 9 25
- 10 (freelance) accountant
- 11 £10-20,000
- 12 Professional Woman
- 13 every week/weekly
- 14 profile/biographical
- 15 historical/about women's roles in the past
- 16 fashion pages
- 17 horoscopes
- 18 gives her/builds confidence

Part 2

You will hear a young woman being interviewed for a market research project about magazines. For questions 9 to 18, fill in the questionnaire.

Man: Excuse me. I was wondering if you'd have time to answer a few questions?

Woman: Oh – oh I'm not sure. You see I'm meeting somebody in half an hour and –

Man: It'll only take a few minutes.

Woman: Oh, all right. What did you want to ask about?

Man: We're doing some market research about magazines – which people buy, how often and all that.

Woman: I see. Okay, fire away.

Man: First of all, if you wouldn't mind telling me your age?

Woman: Today's my birthday actually – I'm a quarter of a century old. Bit of a shock really (laughs).

Man: Oh, er – happy birthday!

Woman: Thanks.

Man: And what do you do for a living?

Woman: I do accounts for several small businesses. Freelance, you know.

Man: And if you could give me an idea of your income? To the nearest ten thousand, you know – under ten thousand, ten to twenty and so on.

Woman: Well, it varies you know, and my business is only just starting to build up, but I'd say I'm in the second category. Up to 20 thousand I mean.

Man: Right. And do you buy any magazines regularly – or any at all is what I mean.

Woman: There's only one I really read.

Man: Which is that?

Woman: It's called, er, *Working Woman*.

Man: You don't mean *Professional Woman*, do you?

Woman: Oh, er – yes, you're right. I always get that wrong.

Man: Okay. And how often do you buy it?

Woman: Oh, I never miss an issue.

Man: And that's a weekly, isn't it?

Woman: That's right.

Man: Good. Now, do you have any, er, favourite parts of the magazine – certain features that you particularly enjoy or that you find particularly useful?

Woman: Mm, I think. I know the first thing I always read is the profile thing – you know, a piece about a successful businesswoman, how she made it to where she is and all that. Yeah, I like that. I also really enjoy the historical pieces, about women's roles in the past and how they changed and all that.

Man: So that's the biographical and historical sections. Is there anything you don't like about the magazine – anything you'd like to see changed in any way?

Woman: I don't much like the fashion pages. I mean, there are other magazines for that kind of thing, aren't there? I'd rather read about something a bit more serious. I'm not too keen on the horoscopes either – I mean, they're amusing sometimes, but really it's just a waste of paper.

Man: Is there anything else you'd like to say about the magazine – I mean, to give us an idea of why you buy it?

Woman: Well, I think that, unlike a lot of other women's magazines, this one gives women a real place in the world. For someone like me, trying to make a go of my own business, I suppose it boosts my confidence. Yeah, it – it's confidence-building.

Man: It was nothing ...

SB: Yes, I think women would probably be more interested in this, as they're generally more fashion-conscious.

SA: The second magazine must be about science and technology.

SB: It probably contains information about all the latest inventions, and what scientists are discovering.

SA: I think that people who are interested in science would buy it. Scientists and people who are studying science.

SB: 'Motoring' magazine will tell you about cars and driving, new cars that have just been launched and classic cars that have become collector's items.

SA: People who are looking to buy a new car might buy this magazine as they would want all the latest information about what's on the market.

SB: The magazine 'Seaways' will tell the readers all about boats, yachts and sailing. Obviously, it would only be of interest to people who sail or own some sort of boat.

SA: This magazine 'The Fairy Queen' looks like a magazine for children, especially little girls.

SB: It probably has lots of fairy stories inside which young girls would like.

SA: I think gardeners would buy 'Gardens' magazine, as it will be able to give them ideas on what to do with their gardens.

SB: The last magazine 'The Economist' is obviously for professionals and people working in business who want to know about finance and politics.

➤ Part 4

- **SA:** I like reading books and magazines. I like books about adventures or crime novels.
SB: I like fashion magazines because I can get an idea of what I should be wearing.
- **SA:** I buy magazines to read for fun. I like to spend my free time reading them. I don't think they're very educational though.
SB: I disagree. I often use magazines when I'm doing projects at school. I think they can be very educational.
- **SA:** I get most of my information from the TV. I don't really read newspapers except to find out what's on TV.
SB: I always read a newspaper as I think it's really important to know what's going on in the world.

Exam Focus – Speaking (p. 149)

➤ Part 3

(Suggested answers)

- **SA:** Well, I think the first magazine is obviously about fashion. It's probably got lots of information about the latest clothes people are buying and where you can find them.

- **SA:** I think comics are better for children than watching TV because at least they still use their imagination a little, and they do encourage children to read.

SB: I don't think comics are good for children at all. I think that children should be encouraged to read books, and not something with so many pictures where they just look at the pictures and don't have to use their imagination.

Exam Focus – Writing (p. 150)

Reviews

1	1 audience	5 scene	9 acted
	2 role	6 illustrated	10 portrays
	3 stars	7 masterpiece	
	4 plot	8 acting	

- 2** **first paragraph** – introduction, background, setting
second paragraph – main points of plot
third paragraph – general comments
concluding paragraph – recommendation

- 1 On the East coast of America
- 2 Al Pacino and Chris O'Donnell
- 3 A young scholarship student answers an advertisement requesting a student companion for a blind colonel and is forced to accompany the colonel on a trip to New York. The student later discovers that the colonel is planning to kill himself and it is up to him to prevent it from happening.
- 4 Yes, it is highly recommended.

3 'Shirley' by Charlotte Brontë

The book is set in a country town in England during the Napoleonic Wars. It tells the story of Shirley, an heiress, Caroline, her friend and the men they love. It is a historical novel with elements of romance and adventure.

The story deals with Robert Moore, a mill owner who is trying to modernise his factory. A group of people called the Luddites are trying to stop him as they know new machinery will mean loss of jobs. Caroline Helstone is in love with Robert, but believes he loves Shirley, and Shirley returns his affection. We see her suffering and in anguish until she finds out that Shirley does not love Robert, but his brother Louis. Louis is a tutor and as he is socially inferior to Shirley, they try to deny their feelings for each other. The novel ends with Robert declaring his love for Caroline and Shirley and Louis defying social convention and marrying.

'Shirley' is a beautifully written novel. It portrays Charlotte Brontë's belief that the denial of the world of feeling is responsible for much of society's suffering.

I can thoroughly recommend this book as it is a classic of its kind that influenced many writers in the 19th century.

Tenses used to describe plot are the present and present continuous.

The **purpose** of the first paragraph is to set the background.

The **purpose** of the second paragraph is to give us an idea of the main points of the plot.

The **purpose** of the third paragraph is to give some general comments.

The **purpose** of the last paragraph is to recommend 'Shirley' to the readers.

- 4** It is beautifully written – book review
 it was well acted – film review
 it is published by – book review
 it stars – film review
 the role of ... is played by – film review
 it is well directed – film review
 it is a thrilling read – book review

5 (Suggested answer)

Mrs Harrison's Secret

This is the latest film by veteran director Larry Cherson. Set in Victorian London, it stars Melandra Price as servant Lucie Jeavons, who knows more than she should about her employer, the sinister Doctor Harrison.

The plot centres on Lucie's relationship with the doctor and his sickly wife Maura. This is Price's first major role and it is a stunning debut. She is utterly convincing as the courageous Lucie. She is ably supported by the rest of the cast, especially the excellent Brian Malovin as the doctor. His acting seems to get better with every role.

Based on the novel 'Gaslight Horror', the script was written by Jim Freeman, who provides a shocking and totally unexpected twist to the plot which had us all on the edge of our seats.

The film is one of the best to come from a British director for a long time and is well worth seeing.

Unit 7

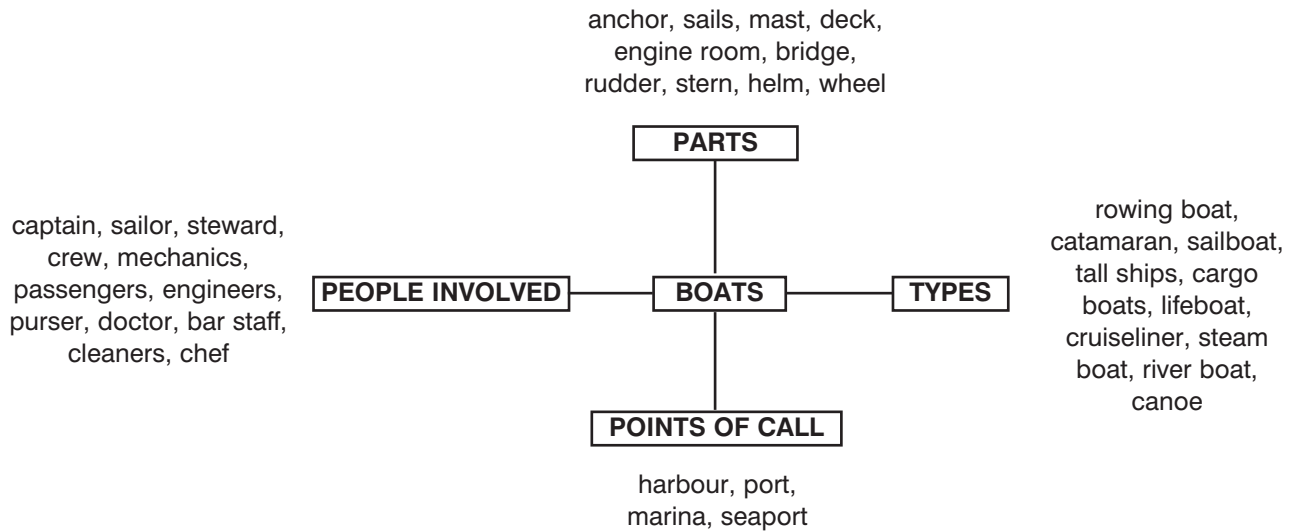
Part 1

➤ **Warm-up Activities: Part 1 (p. 152)**

(Suggested answers)

- Yes, I definitely enjoy travelling by boat because I like the sea a lot. There are certain disadvantages though. You can get held up because the ship can't depart if the weather is bad. Also, some people get seasick and then the voyage becomes a nightmare for them.

Some words related to boats are: sailing, voyage, ship, anchor, port, captain, crew, seasick, shipwreck, lifeboat, sails, canoe, etc. (As an alternative, T can draw a spidergram on the board and elicit the following words.)



- The Sail Training Association is a **British** charity organisation which gives **young** people a chance to sail on a large ship. It recently gave thirty-nine **youngsters** from eight European countries the chance to sail in the Cutty Sark Race. They were at sea for five months. The ship had problems because of high winds and **a rough** sea. The young novice sailors were seasick. Despite this, the youngsters enjoyed the **work** they had to do and the friends they made. Everyone had to speak some **English** to participate. They all agreed that they had no regrets about the voyage but they were glad to return and they woke up the Norwegian port town with their singing and **cheering**.

➤ **Reading Task: Part 1 (pp. 152 - 153)**

1 A 2 C 3 H 4 F 5 G 6 I 7 B

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 1 (pp. 154 - 155)**

- 1 final leg** – last part of a trip, race etc.
- tall ships** – boats with exceptionally tall masts
- uniting** – bringing together
- high winds** – strong winds
- novice** – inexperienced person in a certain task
- fairground ride** – an attraction at a fair like the big wheel/rollercoaster
- participants** – those who take part in sth
- dry land** – (exp) land, after a time at sea
- cheering** – shouting loudly to show approval

- 2**
- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1 trophy | 6 was awarded |
| 2 destination | 7 trainee |
| 3 Association | 8 participate in |
| 4 charity | 9 request |
| 5 contribute | 10 unpredictable |

- 3** (Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- | | | |
|------------|------------|---------------|
| 1 to give | 4 to reach | 7 to face |
| 2 to make | 5 charity | 8 at the same |
| 3 to bring | 6 became | 9 to raise |

- 4**
- | | |
|----------------|---------------------|
| 1 particularly | 7 arrangements |
| 2 sailing | 8 ability/abilities |
| 3 Frequently | 9 enjoyable |
| 4 participants | 10 fully |
| 5 knowledge | 11 adventurous |
| 6 experienced | |

- 5 a**
- | | | |
|----------|--------|-----------|
| 1 flight | 3 tour | 5 journey |
| 2 ride | 4 trip | 6 voyage |

- b** 1 raise 2 rise 3 arise

- c** 1 reward 2 award 3 prize

- 6**
- | | | |
|---------|-----------|------------|
| 1 beach | 3 request | 5 option |
| 2 show | 4 rarely | 6 flatmate |

- 7** 1 out 2 up 3 into 4 up 5 up for

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 1 (p. 155)**

- **Participants:** 39 young people from 8 European countries

Name of ship and race: 'Sir Winston Churchill', Cutty Sark Tall Ships Race

Destination: Norway (N.B. they didn't go to Antwerp)

Good experiences: working as part of a team, seeing Norway, making new friends, co-operating, being able to practise speaking English

Bad experiences: being seasick, travelling in rough weather, cramped sleeping quarters

(Suggested answer)

- Dear Sir/Madam,

I have seen that you are holding your annual charity race on Friday 13th April, and I am writing to ask you to send me an application from so that I may enter.

I am a keen sailor, but I do not have any sailing qualifications. Can you please let me know if this will be a problem? Also, will you

supply life-jackets to the competitors or shall I bring my own?

Should I be eligible to enter the race, please inform me of the time it will start and how much earlier I should be there to carry out checks, final preparations etc.

Finally, as I am a student, is there any possibility of a reduction in the entrance fee?

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours faithfully,

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 1 (p. 155)**

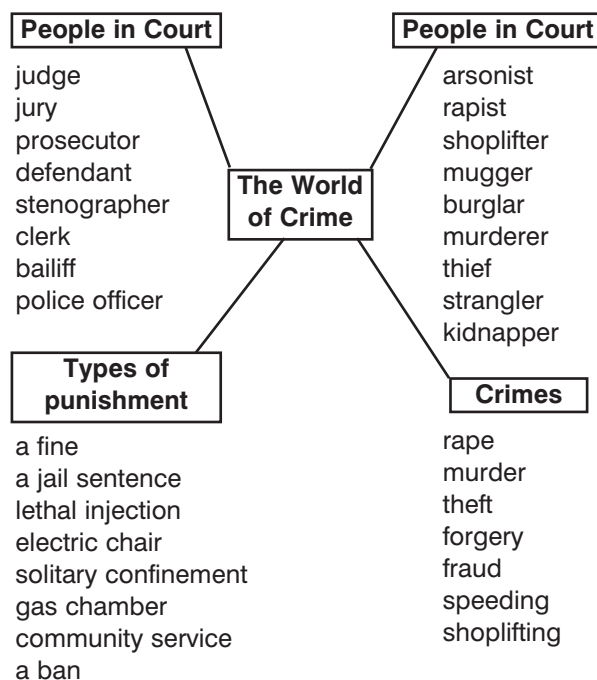
- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1 has been in | 5 has been to |
| 2 has gone to | 6 have gone to |
| 3 have been to | 7 has gone to |
| 4 have, been to | |

Part 2

➤ **Warm-up Activities: Part 2 (p. 156)**

- **(Suggested answers)**

(T draws the following spidergram on the board and elicits relevant words from Ss.)



Well, actually I saw it on TV two years ago and I was very impressed.

(T should tell Ss a brief summary of the actual story. Dr Jekyll was a scientist who developed a potion that altered his state of mind and appearance. He

named his 'other self' Mr Hyde and, under the influence of the formula, committed many murders. Hyde disappeared following the death of a prominent figure, Sir Danvers, and re-emerged into society as Dr Jekyll.)

- 1 Mr Hyde disappears.
- 2 Dr Jekyll starts to go out more often.
- 3 On January 8th, Utterson has dinner at Dr Jekyll's house.
- 4 Utterson is refused admittance to Dr Jekyll's house.
- 5 Utterson goes to see Dr Lanyon.
- 6 Dr Lanyon looks very ill.
- 7 Dr Lanyon dies.

➤ Reading Task: Part 2 (pp. 156 - 157)

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 8 B (Ln 2) | 12 D (Ln 28 - 30) |
| 9 B (Ln 10 - 11) | 13 A (Ln 35 - 36) |
| 10 C (Ln 16 - 18) | 14 B (Ln 37 - 38) |
| 11 C (Ln 18 - 20) | 15 C (Ln 39 - 40) |

➤ Vocabulary Exercises: Part 2 (pp. 158 - 159)

1 cruelty – unkindness

acquaintances – people you know, but not well enough to consider them as friends

hatred – very strong feeling of contempt or dislike

whisper – to talk very quietly

gradually – slowly

evil – wicked/unkind

influence – the power to form people's opinion

generosity – willingness to share one's possessions with others

laboratory – room where scientific experiments are conducted

- 2**
- | | |
|-----------------|------------|
| 1 distinguished | 4 dine |
| 2 conscience | 5 tempting |
| 3 disgraceful | 6 immoral |

- 3 a**
- | | |
|--------|---------|
| 1 mist | 3 cloud |
| 2 smog | 4 fog |

- b**
- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1 wrecked | 3 damaged |
| 2 spoiled | 4 ruined |

- 4**
- | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|
| 1 faded | 3 faint | 5 pale |
| 2 pale | 4 faint | 6 faint |

- 5**
- | | | |
|------------|-----------------|---------|
| 1 happily | 4 investigation | 7 proof |
| 2 shocking | 5 burglary | |
| 3 lengthy | 6 guilty | |

6 (Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1 in the open | 7 pitiless |
| 2 violent | 8 troubled |
| 3 peace | 9 to be refused |
| 4 to grow | 10 a look |
| 5 to do | 11 to strengthen |
| 6 to recover | 12 in low |

7

1 in reward	4 in struck
2 took to her bed	5 melt into the fog
3 at peace	

8

1 k	3 g	5 j	7 i	9 c	11 f
2 d	4 h	6 b	8 a	10 e	12 l

arsonist, shoplifter, mugger, burglar, murderer, kidnapper, terrorist, pickpocket, assassin, hijacker, forger, thief

9 Types of criminals – a rapist, an arsonist, a mugger, murderer, a burglar, an offender

People in court – a jury, a prosecution lawyer, an offender, a stenographer, a defence lawyer

Verbs of crime – to steal, to acquit, to murder, to rob

Forms of Punishment – a jail sentence, a fine, death sentence, electric chair, lethal injection, gas chamber, a suspended sentence, life imprisonment

➤ Follow-up Activities: Part 2 (p. 159)

- **Dr Jekyll** – changeable, moody, sometimes sociable, kind, generous, other times unsociable, isolates himself

Mr Utterson – has a conscience, worries about his friends

Dr Lanyon – filled with terror, acting strangely, sudden weight loss, hair loss, ageing

- (Ss work in pairs. T checks round class and asks some pairs to report back to the class.)

(Suggested answers)

speeding – a fine and a ban on driving for 6 months

shoplifting – small fine and 30 days community service

mugging – 1-3 years in prison

burglary – 6 months to one year in prison

armed robbery – 5-10 years in prison

murder - life imprisonment

neglecting an animal - fine and a ban on keeping animals

• **(Suggested answers)**

I was standing with my mother in a queue at the Midwest bank at about 11:00 am on Monday 3rd April, when suddenly two men burst in through the doors holding guns.

Nobody realised what was going on until one of the men shouted at everyone and told us to lie down on the floor. The other man then went over to a cashier and pointed his gun at her. He told her to open the safe and put all the money in a bag which he gave her. I think the man was quite nervous, because he kept telling the woman to hurry. The whole time this was happening the other man was pointing his gun at all the people on the floor and telling us not to move. Both men seemed to be quite young, although I couldn't see them properly because I was lying on the floor. I did notice though that one had short blond hair and was about 6 feet tall, and other one was short and fat with dark brown hair. I think that the robbers had planned what they were going to do well in advance, because they both seemed quite sure of what they were doing, and knew to strike at a time when the safe was full.

When the bag had been filled with money the men ran out and jumped onto a motorbike. They, then drove off in the direction of Whitehawk.

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 2 (p. 159)**

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1 ourselves | 5 himself | 9 myself |
| 2 herself | 6 yourself | 10 themselves |
| 3 himself | 7 yourselves | 11 herself |
| 4 myself | 8 yourself | 12 himself |

Part 3

➤ **Warm-up Activities: Part 3 (p. 160)**

(Suggested answers)

- The pictures show the moon. I can't see any direct connection between the pictures and the title of the text other than, perhaps, that 'Village Lamp' is another expression for the moon. The moon may have been called this because it helped villagers see at night when there was no electricity.

Facts about the moon: There is no life there. Man has travelled there. The Moon orbits the earth. It seems to change shape etc.

- Well, I've heard some superstitions, like if you see a black cat it means bad luck, or if a mirror breaks then you will have seven years of bad

luck. As far as the moon is concerned, I think if you see the new moon through glass you will have bad luck unless you turn around three times and bow. It is believed that some people turn into werewolves at full moon.

- a Lamp
- b candles, torches
- c light
- d pig-killer
- e planted, cow
- f water

➤ **Reading Task: Part 3 (pp. 160 - 161)**

16 G 17 B 18 A 19 H 20 C 21 F

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 3 (pp. 162 - 163)**

- 1** **fading** – becoming less strong
referred to – called
flow – movement of sth, esp a liquid
sap – watery liquid in plants and trees
cracks – small gaps between two things which have been joined together
tides – the rise and fall of the sea level
composed of – consisting of
supernatural – of facts which cannot be explained scientifically – e.g. ghosts etc.
be blamed on – be accused as being the cause of sth

- 2** 1 waning 2 torch 3 confined to 4 superstitious 5 firewood 6 weeds 7 widespread 8 shrink 9 declined 10 artificial

- 3** 1 superstitious 2 unexplored 3 technological 4 intriguing 5 mysterious 6 beliefs

- 4** 1 distance 2 tune 3 keep 4 action 5 expand 6 disregard

5 (Ss should memorise these text related collocations and expressions. T checks in the next lesson.)

- | | | |
|--------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1 to last | 4 electric | 7 full |
| 2 widespread | 5 to follow | 8 the light |
| 3 to make | 6 supernatural | 9 to take |

- 6** 1 touch wood 2 keep our fingers crossed 3 black cat 4 ladder 5 break a leg 6 broken mirror

- 7**
- | | | | |
|----------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| a | 1 columns | 2 post | 3 pillars |
| b | 1 trace | 3 trail | |
| | 2 track | 4 lane | |
| c | 1 consist | 2 compose | 3 include |
| d | 1 lay | 3 lying | 5 lay |
| | 2 Lie | 4 laid | 6 lie |
| e | 1 affect | 2 influence | |
| f | 1 logs | 2 wood | 3 boards |
- 8**
- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------|
| 1 light heart | 3 pitch dark |
| 2 as light as a feather | 4 in the dark |

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 3 (p. 163)**

• **(Suggested answers)**

People shouldn't kill pigs when the moon is fading because the meat might go bad. Cutting firewood should be done in the 'dark of the moon'. Planting seeds should be done at the time of the new moon or shortly after it. Laying floorboards in a cottage should be done during the 'light of the moon', otherwise boards shrink and weeds appear through the cracks.

• **(Suggested answers)**

(Refer Ss to the relevant theory and discuss briefly what they should include in their report. This report can be written in formal style or a rather informal one.)

Less Formal Style

The result of a recent survey shows very clearly that a large majority of people today still hold very strong beliefs when it comes to superstitions. The survey shows that the 65% most likely to believe in superstitions are over the age of 40.

Those people who are least likely to believe in superstitions are under the age of 25, as only 20 surveyed believe in superstitions. In fact, a surprisingly large percentage, 38%, of those asked said that they believe 'strongly' in superstitions, while 43% said that they believed in only a few superstitions. Only a very small percentage, 18% did not believe in superstitions at all. The superstitions that are most widely believed are that walking under a ladder is unlucky, and that breaking a mirror causes seven years back luck.

The survey showed that superstition continues to influence a large number of people's lives today, although this applies more to the older generation than to the younger members of society.

If the same report was to be written in formal style, then the following answer would be acceptable.

Formal Style

The results of a recent survey show very clearly that a large majority of people today are superstitious. This is indicated by the fact that 81% of those asked said that they believed in superstitions.

Age Differences

It was found that those most likely to believe in superstitions were over the age of 40 – 65% of those over 40 believe in superstitions. Those least likely to believe in superstitions were under the age of 25 – only 20% of under 25 year olds believe in superstitions.

Depths of People's Beliefs

The extent to which people believe in superstitions was found to vary greatly. A surprisingly large percentage, 38%, of those asked said that they believe 'strongly' in superstitions, while 43% said that they believed in 'a few' superstitions, but not others. Only a small percentage, 18% of those asked, did not believe in superstitions at all.

Different Superstitions

The superstitions most widely believed in were that walking under a ladder is unlucky, and that breaking a mirror causes seven years bad luck.

Conclusion

The survey showed that superstition continues to influence a large number of people's lives today, although this applies more to the older generation than to younger members of society.

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 3 (p. 163)**

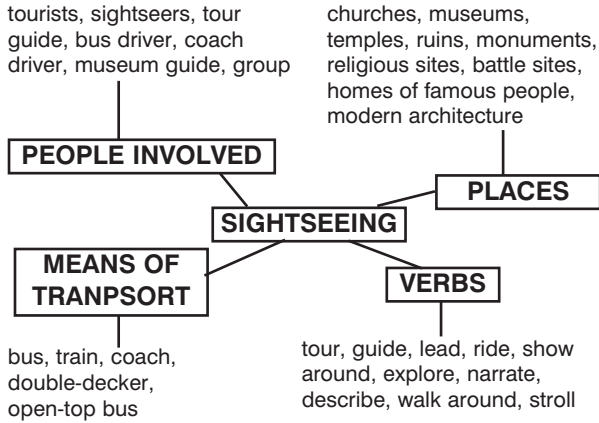
- | | | |
|--------------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1 There, it | 5 It, there | 9 There, it |
| 2 It, there | 6 It, there | 10 It, there |
| 3 There | 7 there | |
| 4 There, there, it | 8 it | |

Part 4

➤ **Warm-up Activities: Part 4 (p. 164)**

• **(Suggested answers)**

(T draws the following spidergram on the board and writes down some words related to the topic, then elicits relevant vocabulary from Ss.)



- Well, I'd choose a place of historical interest because I want to learn about ancient civilisations and about the culture of people who lived in the past.
- a Roman, 17, glass
b ferry
c sea
d 'Guide Friday', day, largest
e 40, River Wild, refreshments

➤ **Reading Task: Part 4 (pp. 164 - 165)**

- | | | | |
|-------|-------------------|----|---|
| 22 | C | 31 | B |
| 23/24 | A, D in any order | 32 | C |
| 25/26 | B, D in any order | 33 | E |
| 27 | E | 34 | A |
| 28/29 | A, D in any order | 35 | D |
| 30 | E | | |

➤ **Vocabulary Exercises: Part 4 (p. 166)**

- 1** 1 amazingly 3 visitors 5 creatively
2 peaceful 4 delightful 6 continental*
- (* continental-style restaurant mean restaurants serving French food)
- 2 a** 1 inter-city 3 express
2 goods 4 local
- b** 1 single 2 return 3 season
- 3** 1 warfare 3 medieval 5 outlook
2 pilgrims 4 embark on

➤ **Follow-up Activities: Part 4 (p. 166)**

(Before Ss do the activities, ask them to read the texts of Part 4 and underline the unknown words. T then elicits/explains these words.)

• **(Suggested answers)**

Of the five places mentioned in the text, the one I'd most like to visit is York. I'd enjoy wandering about the narrow winding streets, thinking about the past and types of lives people led back then – what jobs they did, what they did when they weren't working and so on. Also, I'd be able to do some shopping and buy some presents for my friends back home. After shopping, I'd move on to do some sightseeing at York Minster, and, then walk round the city walls to get a good view of the whole place.

- (Before Ss are assigned this as written HW T should give them or elicit from them information relevant to Paris: location: in the northwest of France; population: 15,000,000; attractions: The Eiffel Tower, Sacre-Coeur, the Pompidou Centre, the Louvre etc; shopping: the Champs Elysee; entertainment: cafés, Moulin Rouge.)

• **(Suggested answers)**

The much loved French capital Paris is situated in the northwest of France, has a population of 15,000,000 and is a holiday location for tourists from all over the world.

Many holidaymakers go to Paris simply to see the sights. The Eiffel Tower is a must. If you venture to the top, there is a breathtaking view of the city. The Sacre-Coeur, a beautiful ancient cathedral, is also worth a visit, whereas the Pompidou Centre, at the opposite end of the scale, gives you a glimpse of modern-day Parisian architecture.

However, activities such as shopping should not be overlooked. The Champs Elysee has the latest in top fashions. Although it tends to be a bit on the pricey side, there are some good bargains to be found. At night, you can either go to a quiet café on the 'terrace,' or if you'd prefer something a little more outrageous, a visit to he famous 'Moulin Rouge'.

Personally, I'd recommend Paris to anyone. It has a certain magic about it that cannot be described.

➤ **Grammar Check: Part 4 (p. 166)**

- | | | | |
|---|-------------|---|------------------|
| 1 | —, —, the | 6 | the, — |
| 2 | the, the | 7 | —, —, the |
| 3 | the, —, the | 8 | The, —, the, the |
| 4 | —, the, the | 9 | —, the, the |
| 5 | —, — | | |

Exam Focus – Use of English (p. 167)

➤ Part 2

1 for/in	6 away	11 on
2 so	7 which/that	12 fact
3 from	8 with	13 as
4 till/until	9 throughout	14 old
5 variety/range	10 There	15 both

➤ Part 4

1 like	6 ✓	11 of
2 own	7 was	12 ✓
3 being	8 ✓	13 to
4 ✓	9 sound	14 ✓
5 it	10 many	15 been

➤ Prepositions

1 for	9 in	17 on
2 of	10 for/on	18 up
3 over	11 by	19 at
4 with	12 or	20 to
5 on	13 in	21 by/at
6 of	14 from	22 for
7 in	15 on	
8 on	16 to	

(Ss should memorise these prepositions. T checks in the next lesson.)

Exam Focus – Listening (pp. 168 - 169)

➤ Part 3

19 E 20 C 21 D 22 B 23 F

Part 3

You'll hear five people talking about their favourite kind of film. For questions 19 to 23, choose from the list A to F the type of film that is being described. Use the letters only once. There's one extra letter which you do not need to use.

Speaker 1 (male): I really can't stand all that mushy love stuff. I find it very embarrassing really, particularly if you go out with a girl for the first time. No, what I really enjoy is lots of guns and action, not too much violence mind you, but car chases and heroes that you can really admire. Like all those old westerns, or even those old cops and robbers films.

Speaker 2 (male): Violence in any form really bothers me a lot. I'm also not too keen on technological things or special effects with computers. It just doesn't interest me. I like a good storyline and believable characters. A real human interest story, you know. Some people find those kind of films depressing. But I like films that make you think even if the story is very moving and close to real life. I like rather serious films really. I don't go to the cinema to escape.

Speaker 3 (male): I love being scared to death. I really mean it. I don't care whether the plot is set in the future or the past – just as long as it's scary, I'll like it. The violence doesn't bother me – I mean, a monster with an axe is hardly going to come after you in real life, is he? It's just a bit of fun, an escape from reality. I like monsters and all the bodies everywhere. It's fun.

Speaker 4 (female): I can't stand anything which is serious and too much like the problems we have in real life. What I enjoy is a good laugh. The stupider and sillier it is, the more I enjoy it. I love those old silent films with the characters falling over all the time and making funny faces. I also enjoy clever dialogue. Really witty stuff that makes you think but also brings a smile to your face.

Speaker 5 (female): I'm very interested in computers and the latest technology, I can imagine a future run by machines. I love horror films too, but my main love is futuristic stuff – the stuff of the 21st century and beyond. The way we imagine the world could be with robots and machines and computers. I'm not interested in real-life dramas, and most comedies I find quite stupid.

➤ Part 4

24 F 26 T 28 T 30 T
25 F 27 F 29 F

Part 4

You'll hear a conversation which takes place in an office. Answer questions 24 to 30 by writing T (for true) or F (for false) in the boxes provided.

Louise: ... I thought I'd never get him off the phone. Now, as you both know, the move is coming up next weekend, and it's going to take some serious organisation if we're not to end up in complete chaos in the new offices. Of course it couldn't have come at a worse time, what with all these new accounts coming in, but it can't be helped I suppose. Now, David, have you organised moving the computers – and the files?

David: Well, I've been trying to organise it for days but nobody seems to be available to do it at the weekend.

Louise: But I thought you'd already found a reliable company and ...

David: When I rang them back to confirm they claimed we'd never made a definite booking. I tried to get on to the person I'd spoken to before, but she's away, and they say they just can't fit us in.

Louise: Well, that's fine – perfect. Now what are we supposed to do?

Paula: Actually, my brother-in-law has a removals firm. It's – they're not exactly specialists, but I know they're very good and ...

Louise: Well, give the number to David – see if you can arrange something. But only if they're properly insured, mind.

David: And if they're not available?

Paula: I'm sure they'll be able to do it. Maybe they can put somebody else off. After all, it's urgent, isn't it?

Louise: Exactly. Well, let's keep our fingers crossed. Now Paula – are all the supplies ready to go? And have we arranged for everyone to pack up their own desks?

Paula: Erm, it's all arranged about the desks – I mean, apart from a couple of people who insist they can't stay on Friday and do theirs. But I thought I could -

Louise: No, no, no – you've got enough to do without that. Could you just give me their names when we've finished up here, and I'll let them know that they simply have no choice in the matter. No one else is going to be made responsible for anyone else's desk. What about supplies?

Paula: I think that's all in order. Some of the boys stayed late yesterday, and when I looked in this morning it seemed all ready to go.

Louise: Well, that's a relief at least. Oh, I nearly forgot. David, have we arranged about setting up the computers at the other end? I mean, if they're not functioning first thing Monday morning we'll be completely paralysed. The new phone system is in already – I've checked that – but the computers ...

David: No need to worry about that. They've got a whole team of people ready and waiting.

Louise: Good! Good! Now, am I forgetting anything? Oh no! What about the old files? There are cabinets and cabinets full of them!

Paula: Mr Williams said that since we hardly use them they could stay behind for a while – I mean, until we've all settled in the new place.

Louise: Hardly use them? I was just in there yesterday trying to track down some very important

documents. I'll have a word with Mr Williams then. Though why we haven't got all that on the computers by now is beyond me ... (fade out)

Exam Focus – Speaking (pp. 170 - 171)

➤ Part 2

(Suggested answers)

Picture A is of a full moon, and **picture B** is of a black cat. Both of these things are associated with superstitions.

- No, I am not very superstitious, but I always touch wood when I hope that something I've said won't happen.
- There are a lot of superstitions associated with the moon. The full moon, for example is a time when some people are supposed to turn into werewolves. In the countryside, people would only put up fences, or cut logs for firewood, when the moon was in certain stages. Beliefs can vary in different cultures. A black cat crossing your path for example, is good luck in some cultures, and bad luck in others.
- Breaking a mirror is supposed to bring you 7 years' bad luck. It is also bad luck to walk under a ladder. Finding a four leaf clover is supposed to bring you good luck. In England, seeing one magpie is said to bring you sorrow, while seeing two is meant to bring you joy.
- **Picture C** is of a boat, and **picture D** is of a train. They are both different ways of travelling.
- I would prefer to travel by boat, because it would be more exciting than travelling by train. Some people get seasick, but I don't.
- There are lots of ways to pass the time while travelling. I would read a book, or look out of the window. You can also write letters to people, or if you are travelling with somebody else you can play games.
- I think that the train is a very convenient means of travel, because if there is a storm, boats can be delayed. Trains are also much faster than boats, and the journey is much smoother. But generally, the plane is the most convenient of all.

➤ Part 3

(Suggested answers)

- **SA:** Advertising at football grounds is very effective because everyone who goes to watch a match will see it.

SB: Yes, but they won't be looking at advertisements, they'll be watching the match.

SA: Advertisements in newspapers are effective because readers of the newspaper have no choice but to read them.

SB: However, many people just ignore advertisements in newspapers.

SA: Promoting a product by selling it door-to-door can be effective because people cannot ignore the product if it's on their doorstep.

SB: Yes, but some people can get irritated by this kind of advertising, which may put them off the product.

SA: Advertising using an aeroplane to fly a message through the sky can be effective because it always attracts people's attention.

SB: However, it is quite an expensive method of advertising and doesn't last very long.

SA: Advertising on buses is effective because it is seen by a lot of people as the bus travels all over the town.

SB: Yes, I agree. Billboard advertising is also effective because a lot of people will see the advertisement as they pass by every day.

SA: Yes, but it can be expensive, etc.

➤ Part 4

(Suggested answers)

- **SA:** I think the most effective form of advertising is that using buses, trains and other forms of public transport.
SB: Yes, I think you're right. The advertisements are seen by large numbers of people, which are likely to catch their eye.
- **SA:** I think that a lot of soap powders are cleverly advertised on the TV using famous people to promote them.
SB: I don't agree. I think that some soap powder advertisements aren't very good. People don't think a product is good just because a famous person says it is. I prefer cleverer, more thought-provoking advertisements not just those with beautiful or famous people.
- **SA:** Good advertising certainly does encourage people to try products that they would not usually buy.
SB: Yes, but it only affects people who can be easily influenced or persuaded to buy things that they don't really need.

Exam Focus – Writing (p. 172)

1 1 C 2 A 3 D 4 B

2 (Suggested answer)

We'd been looking forward to this holiday for ages. Just my husband John and I, as the kids were staying with my parents. We boarded early on Tuesday morning so as to get a good seat on the top deck. The weather was sunny, but cold with quite a strong wind.

The first four hours were lovely. We had a meal in the restaurant and then walked on the deck for ten minutes. We were just going back into the lounge when suddenly the engines stopped. After a few minutes, the captain's voice came over the loud speaker telling us not to worry. There was a slight problem with the starboard engine, but the boat should be underway again in the next 15 minutes.

Two hours later we were still dead in the water, 'If we're stuck here any longer we'll be too late to check into the hotel,' complained John. To be honest, I was getting a bit worried as the wind was getting stronger and the boat seemed to be moving sideways.

The next three nights will stay in my memory forever. Food and water ran low and fights broke out as people became more and more tired and frightened. I had almost given up hope when we were finally found and towed to some port in Holland. As I left the ferry a reporter asked me how I felt. I said something about wanting a shower and some sleep. I was just so glad to be on dry land.

- 3 (Before *Ss* do Ex. 3 *T* explains that the title of the article is part of a proverb: '**All Work and No Play makes Jack a dull boy.**' This proverb means that if someone works too hard it can make them very uninteresting.)

(Suggested answer)

- The article is argumentative, giving advantages and disadvantages

Outline:

First paragraph – state the topic of the article

Second paragraph – give advantages

Third paragraph – give disadvantages

Concluding paragraph – give a balanced consideration of the topic and include a personal opinion

Linking words: the main incentive for, there are also many drawbacks to, the main one (to list advantages and disadvantages)

Added to this, also (to add more points to a topic)
Such as (to give an example)

However (to make a contrasting point)
As a result (to express effect)

(Suggested answer)

First paragraph: As the economic situation of many countries improves, more and more businesses are expanding, creating new jobs for many people. This has led to an increase in the number of executive positions in many businesses and thus a surge in the number of executives. But is an executive career always all that it is made out to be?

Last paragraph: All things considered, despite the fact that executive jobs do offer a lot of advantages in terms of career and privileges, it is often at the expense of things that can be considered more important such as family, friends and health. It is up to each individual to decide if the sacrifice is worthwhile.

4 Dear Mary,

I thought I'd drop you a line to let you know how we're getting on. After two days back at work I felt as if I'd never been on holiday – how about you? Anyway we've had our photos developed and we'd love it if you could come and spend next weekend at our house. We could look at the photos and remember the good times we had.

Here are a few directions so you won't get lost. As you enter Manchester, follow the signs for Toxteth until you come to a very big roundabout. Take the third turning for Mayfield and follow that road for about 3 km. You should then pass the Grand Hotel on your right and then immediately after that a school. Turn right at the school and we're the second on the left. If you get lost just give us a ring and George will come and get you.

I hope you'll be able to make it as we'd love to see you again. Give our regards to your family. We're looking forward to seeing you soon.

Love,
Joan & George

Paragraph 1 – reasons for writing

Paragraph 2 – development

Paragraph 3 – closing remarks

5 (Suggested answer)

Dear Sue,

How are you? Have you got anything planned for the summer holidays? Well, do you remember that great language course I went on last year in France? They're running it again and you've just got to come with me this time.

The course is held in a gorgeous French chateau surrounded by lakes and trees. The town of Nantes is about 3 km away. The teachers are all qualified and there are never more than 15 students in a class. After school we can swim in the indoor swimming pool, play tennis or play football (there was a tournament last year). Every evening there is a disco and a film in the chateaucinema.

We'll sleep in a dormitory for 12 people which is great fun and a good way to meet the other students, who are from all over the world. The cost is only £400 so it's really cheap.

Write soon and tell me if you can come with me. I hope you can. We'll have a brilliant time.

Love,
Jenny

6 (Suggested answer)

The most wonderful experience I have ever had was a holiday I spent with a friend in Cornwall. As we were camping, we were afraid that it might rain, but the weather turned out to be gorgeous. I remember that week so clearly: the walk to the beach each day; turning that final corner and suddenly seeing the magnificent ocean spread out before me like a sparkling blue carpet; the hours spent lazily lying in the sun, and plunging into the sea when it got too hot. It was marvellous.

On the last day there, Jack and I were lying on the beach when Jack laughed and said, 'Look at that silly woman waving at us!' We both grinned and waved back, but she didn't look very happy.

'Hold on,' I said suddenly, 'she's not waving to be friendly, she waving for help!' We both ran down the beach and dived into the water to save her. She was OK, but she had got cramp and would certainly have drowned if we hadn't been there! We both got our pictures in the paper!

All in all it was an exciting and rewarding holiday. I'm planning to go again this year!

TEST 1 A (Units 1 - 2)

(Time: 80 minutes)

A You are going to read a magazine article about workers in Denmark. Choose from the list A - H the sentence which best summarises each part (1-6) of the article. There is one extra sentence which you do not need to use. There is an example at the beginning (0).

- A People go back to work fresh and relaxed.
- B The government will cover all the costs.
- C Even employees with difficult jobs can be replaced.
- D Temporary employment may sometimes lead to a permanent job.
- E The plan has not had a great effect on unemployment.
- F The employer can pay more than the fixed rate.
- G Denmark will make a new plan a regular part of working life.
- H The programme is supported by government financing.

Time to play

The government of Denmark has found a way to motivate workers and non-workers.

0

An ambitious experiment was carried out in Denmark last year. The idea was to give employees a year off while unemployed people temporarily took their places at work. It worked so well that the government has decided to make this normal practice.

1

The point of the experiment was to help workers and non-workers alike. The workers are allowed time to relax, enjoy their children, or improve their skills while being sure of getting their job back when they return. It helps to reduce stress and allows them to learn something new so they return to work better and happier people. Non-workers, or people who have been unemployed for a long time, get a chance to get back to work, at least for a while.

2

With high unemployment rates throughout Europe, many countries are studying this new programme with interest. The unemployed get a chance to re-enter the workforce, which gives them hope for the future. The temporary replacements aren't guaranteed jobs, but a company often finds room to keep them on.

3

Civil servant Ilse Hytting went yachting in the Mediterranean on her break. She wanted to learn something about different people in different countries. Her office found it difficult to replace someone with her qualifications, so a colleague took her job to make room for an unemployed person.

4

Another problem this programme deals with is parental or study leave in private businesses. Government employers can usually find

replacements for their pregnant workers or workers who take time off to study, but private employers find this more difficult. This has been made easier as government funding helps companies find replacements.

5

People on leave receive the equivalent to the top rate of unemployment benefit (£300). Those on parental or study leave receive 70 percent of the benefit. The employer in all cases is free to pay more if he wishes.

6

The unemployment rate in Denmark has fallen, but critics say this is deceptive. The people who take over jobs temporarily are not counted as unemployed for that year. However, if they don't find a permanent position, they will become unemployed the next year. Thus, the programme may seem more effective in fighting unemployment than it really is.

B Fill in the appropriate word(s) from the list. Use the word(s) only once.

to put out, double-decker, fire, complimentary, heart, a fully-stocked, to watch, overflowing, fat-free, scientific

- | | | | |
|----------|-------------|----------|---------------|
| 7 | language | 12 | over somebody |
| 8 | carriages | 13 | disease |
| 9 | achievement | 14 | bar |
| 10 | passion | 15 | precautions |
| 11 | milk | 16 | a candle |

C Choose the correct item.

- 17 That plant has a very **(distinctive/exclusive)** smell; no other plant smells like it!
- 18 The police were called to control the crowd after a violent **(revolution/riot)** broke out.
- 19 Rhythm'n'blues music has had a great influence on many of today's **(contemporary/common)** rock'n'roll artists.
- 20 Because he was only **(ordinary/average)** in height, he could not join the basketball team.
- 21 There is a lot of **(vivid/vital)** information stored in the company's computer system.
- 22 The union workers, upset over their salary cuts, caused a great **(disturbance/dispute)** outside the Town Hall.
- 23 The opposing political party won a **(triumph/victory)** in the last election.

D Fill in the gaps with the appropriate word(s) from the list below:

tread, whisked, consumption, process, masterpiece, heightened, suspense

- 24 John us to the concert hall as we were late for the concert.
- 25 The Mona Lisa is Leonardo DaVinci's greatest
- 26 Doctors warn us that the daily of red meat can lead to high cholesterol levels.
- 27 I could hear his heavy as he was walking up the wooden staircase.
- 28 Recovering from a serious illness is a slow and difficult
- 29 The emotions of the audience when the final goal was scored.
- 30 Everybody waited in for the jury's verdict.

E Choose the appropriate word(s) to fill each gap.

- 31 You will go pneumonia if you don't take off your wet clothes.
- 32 If you don't study, you will fall with your school work.
- 33 The criminal finally gave and told the truth about the robbery.
- 34 The burglar ran when he heard the police sirens.
- 35 He put the idea of building a new library in the town centre.

F Fill in the correct preposition(s).

- 36 Christopher Columbus is famous discovering America.
 37 Job centres are aimed decreasing the levels of unemployment.
 38 She is confident the fact that she will pass all her exams with A's.
 39 The servants have always been her Majesty's disposal.
 40 The ambulance arrived in aid the heart attack victim.

G Choose the appropriate idiom to fill in the gaps.

odds and ends; more haste, lest speed; set eyes; skin deep; in the public eye

- 41 It's always been said that beauty is only
 42 '.....', said Jane's mother as she tore her blouse in a rush to put it on.
 43 Famous people are always
 44 He liked her from the moment he on her.
 45 Grandmother has a lot of lying around the house.

H Fill in the correct word derived from the words in bold.

- 46 Using all his physical, he managed to push the car out of the ditch. **STRONG**
 47 He was guilty as all the evidence was against him. **DOUBT**
 48 His boss considered him to be his best **EMPLOY**
 49 Ann's grandfather was in hospital due to a severe heart **ORDER**
 50 The house was always warm due to the thick between its walls. **INSULATE**

I Complete the sentences below using the words in bold. Use two to five words.

- 51 Tom is taller than Bill.
as Bill isn't Tom.
 52 Although she is wealthy, she is sometimes miserable.
despite She her wealth.
 53 'I'm leaving for America,' Anna said to William.
informed Anna leaving for America.
 54 It is said that he will be changing jobs soon.
said He jobs soon.
 55 He hates it when his friends criticise him.
being He hates friends.

J Write an answer to one of the two following questions. Write your answer in 120 - 180 words in an appropriate style, giving the outline first.

- 1 You want to enter a short story competition. You must begin your **story** with the words: 'The car drove off and Jane was left alone. The rest of the day was little short of a nightmare ...'
 2 You have bought an electrical appliance from a shop. Write a **letter of complaint** to the shop manager, complaining about the faulty electrical appliance and asking for a refund.

NAME: _____

DATE: _____

CLASS: _____

(Time: 80 minutes)

TEST 1 A (Units 1 - 2)

A 1 2 3 4 5 6

B 7	12
8	13
9	14
10	15
11	16

C 17	21
18	22
19	23
20	

D 24	28
25	29
26	30
27	

E 31 32 33 34 35

F 36 37 38 39 40

G 41	44
42	45
43	

H 46 47 48 49 50

TEST 1 B (Units 1 - 2)

(Time: 80 minutes)

A You are going to read a magazine article about coats of arms. Choose from the list **A - H** the sentence which best summarises each part (1-6) of the article. There is one extra sentence which you do not need to use. There is an example at the beginning (0).

- A** Coats of arm are important for different reasons now.
B A coat of arms can cost a fortune.
C Your coat of arms showed which army you were in.
D A US President's coat of arms influenced the design of a national symbol.
E Not everybody can have a coat of arms.
F The decorations on a coat of arms show the owner's background.
G Male children may make changes to the design.
H Fake coats of arms are big business in Britain.

Coats of Arms

0

C

Coats of arms are the symbols knights used to put on their shields, armour or horses to identify which side they were fighting for. All men in armour look the same, so it was important to identify the enemy. At first the symbols were simple shapes. Later, animals, objects and people were added.

1

Introduced in Europe in 1130, coats of arms are even more popular now. They are given to cities, professional organisations and companies as well as to individuals. Any distinguished person in a community is allowed a coat of arms, though the right in England is established by the College of Arms in London. Recently Sir Geoffrey Howe ordered a personal coat of arms when he entered the House of Lords. He wanted a wolf dressed in sheep's skin tearing apart a red flag to symbolise his political fame.

2

The invention of the gun in the 14th century ended fighting at close

range, so there was less need for knights to be recognised in battle. Yet the rise of the nobility and the increase in world trade kept coats of arms alive. There were also many people who couldn't read, so a flag at the top of a castle identified its owner in the same way a coat of arms did on a shield.

3

There are two ways to obtain a personal coat of arms. The first is to prove you are a descendant of someone who has used the coat in the past. This is a long procedure with the possibility of many different disputes. The second is to have a new coat of arms designed specially for you. A personal coat costs £32,200, and a company coat may cost £37,500, so the cost is substantial. Any special decoration will add to the cost.

4

The symbols, their position and their colour have a separate meaning for each coat. For example, a red dragon is the symbol for Wales. A mermaid is a symbol for a sailor. these two appearing together on a coat

would mean that family came from Wales and had sailors in the family.

5

It is believed that the design of the American flag was influenced by the first president, George Washington's family's coat of arms. The Washington shield is defined as a white background with two horizontal red bars with three red stars above the bars. The American flag may have taken the red and white stripes for this reason. The blue of the flag was for the union of the states and the white stars represented each state, so the modern flag shows its own descent from the knight's shield.

6

Coats of arms are usually passed down from fathers to sons. The arms remain the same except that each son has the right to add something that will indicate his place in the family tree. The second son can include a half-moon on his coat; the third a star. There are even special marks for children born to unmarried parents.

B Fill in the appropriate word(s) from the list. Use the word(s) only once.

short-term, to deal with, to lean, the effects, to beat, reasonably, to miss out, starchy, eccentric, to take

- | | | | |
|----------|-------------|----------|-------------------|
| 7 | my rivals | 12 | out of the window |
| 8 | formalities | 13 | regular exercise |
| 9 | on the fun | 14 | priced |
| 10 | professor | 15 | of smoking |
| 11 | food | 16 | targets |

C Choose the correct item.

- 17 The grass was harvested and **(squashed/compressed)** into bails of hay.
 18 She has trouble **(swallowing/ingesting)** her food, because she has a sore throat.
 19 Al Capone was a **(notorious/worldwide)** gangster.
 20 If you want to lose weight you should eat **(lean/slender)** meat.
 21 Her necklace looks genuine, but actually it's a **(fake/counterfeit)**.
 22 The **(coarse/hoarse)** texture of the jumper made it uncomfortable to wear.
 23 On hearing of the attack, the Minister's response was **(urgent/swift)**.

D Fill in the gaps with the appropriate word(s) from the list below:

bolted, courtesy, captured, discreet, consume, shuttle, cornerstone

- 24 Bob is very when it comes to family matters.
 25 He didn't have the to apologise for his bad behaviour.
 26 A service links Terminals 1 and 2 at Gatwick Airport.
 27 Trust is the of every successful marriage.
 28 Prison cells are securely to prevent prisoners from escaping.
 29 The latest model cars much less fuel than older ones.
 30 The opera singer the audience's attention.

E Fill in the correct particle(s).

- 31 Brian is in hospital because he was run by a car.
 32 Due to financial problems, they had to put their wedding for another year.
 33 She went to the railway station to see her friend
 34 Jill gave my secret, although she had promised not to tell anyone.
 35 I decided to go Ann's suggestion, even though I disagreed.

F Fill in the correct preposition(s).

- 36 People ought to be aware the damage they are causing to the environment.
 37 He was keen collecting stamps; he had hundreds of them.
 38 The witness provided the police information relevant to the theft.
 39 They were a tight budget, because they wanted to save up for a car.
 40 Full board was included the price of the package holiday.

G Choose the appropriate idiom to fill in the gaps.

bird's eye view, jump out of my skin, make ends meet, the apple of her eye, at lightning speed

- 41 Some scenes in the horror film made me
 42 He managed to drive from London to Manchester in 3 hours: he must have been driving
 43 Her grandson is; she adores him!
 44 Whilst he was flying over Athens, he got a(n) of the city.
 45 Now that her husband is unemployed it is very difficult for them to

H Fill in the correct word derived from the words in bold.

- 46 Her main in life was to become a doctor. **OBJECT**
 47 He behaves; you never know what he'll do next. **PREDICT**
 48 My wedding was the most day of my life. **MEMORY**
 49 The gymnastics he performed were very **IMPRESS**
 50 They were so rude to us; we had never expected such awful from them. **TREAT**

I Complete the sentences below using the words in bold. Use two to five words.

- 51 This book by Arthur Miller is less interesting than his others.
as This book by Arthur Miller his others.
 52 Although she was very tired she agreed to take care of her sister's children for the evening.
despite She took care of her sister's children she was very tired.
 53 'The car needs to be washed', Philip said.
pointed Philip needed to be washed.
 54 He will publish his third novel in July.
published His in July.
 55 I hate it when people talk behind my back.
being I hate behind my back.

J Write an answer to one of the two following questions. Write your answer in 120 - 180 words in an appropriate style, giving the outline first.

- 1 You have seen an advertisement in the newspaper about a vacancy for a tour guide.
 Write a **letter of application** for the job.
- 2 You want to enter a short story competition. You must end your **story** with the following words:
 'Then he vanished. A moment later the cashier was in the street looking for help.'

NAME: _____

DATE: _____

CLASS: _____

(Time: 80 minutes)

TEST 1 B (Units 1 - 2)

A 1 2 3 4 5 6

B 7 12
 8 13
 9 14
 10 15
 11 16

C 17 21
 18 22
 19 23
 20

D 24 28
 25 29
 26 30
 27

E 31 32 33 34 35

F 36 37 38 39 40

G 41 44
 42 45
 43

H 46 47 48 49 50

I	51		51 □ □
	52		52 □ □
	53		53 □ □
	54		54 □ □
	55		55 □ □

WRITING

J

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

TEST 1 A – KEY

- A** 1 A 2 D 3 C 4 H 5 F 6 E
- B** 7 complimentary 12 to watch
 8 double-decker 13 heart
 9 scientific 14 a fully-stocked
 10 overflowing 15 fire
 11 fat-free 16 to put out
- C** 17 distinctive 21 vital
 18 riot 22 disturbance
 19 contemporary 23 victory
 20 average
- D** 24 whisked 28 process
 25 masterpiece 29 heightened
 26 consumption 30 suspense
 27 tread
- E** 31 down with 33 in 35 forward
 32 behind 34 away/off
- F** 36 for 38 of 40 of
 37 at 39 at
- G** 41 skin deep 44 set eyes
 42 More haste, less speed 45 odds and ends
 43 in the public eye
- H** 46 strength 49 disorder
 47 undoubtedly 50 insulation
 48 employee
- I** 51 ... so/as tall as ...
 52 ... is sometimes miserable despite ...
 53 ... informed William that she was ...
 54 ... is said to be changing ...
 55 ... being criticised by his ...

J (Suggested answers)

1 The car drove off and Mrs Brown was left alone. The rest of the day was little short of a nightmare. Mrs Brown looked around. She didn't recognise the place - the building and the landscape looked unfamiliar. Mrs Brown stopped walking for a moment to decide what she was going to do.

Just then she heard the noise of motorcycles in the distance. The noise started to get louder and louder and all of a sudden what seemed like hundreds of huge motorbikes came round the corner. Mrs Brown was horrified. There was nobody on them. As she stood there in the middle of the road, they started to circle her. The circle started to get smaller and smaller until they were very close to her. Mrs Brown felt herself fall to the ground.

The next thing she knew, she was lying in bed. Her husband was stroking her hand. She had had a terrible nightmare.

2 Dear Mr White,

I am writing to complain about an electric kettle I bought from your shop last week.

When I was in your shop I asked the assistant to test it for me and it worked fine, but when I took it home I filled it with water, plugged it in, switched it on and it didn't work.

The following day I came back into town to return the kettle. Unfortunately, you were away at Head Office and the shop assistant I spoke to said there was nothing that he could do and as the kettle was on special offer the money couldn't be returned.

I understand that the kettle does have a one-year guarantee and that the guarantee means you are obliged to either return the money or replace the kettle.

I look forward to hearing from you as soon as possible.

Yours sincerely,

TEST 1 B – KEY

A 1 E 2 A 3 B 4 F 5 D 6 G

B 7 to beat 12 to lean
 8 to deal with 13 to take
 9 to miss out 14 reasonably
 10 eccentric 15 the effects
 11 starchy 16 short-term

C 17 compressed 21 fake
 18 swallowing 22 coarse
 19 notorious 23 swift
 20 to lean

D 24 discreet 28 bolted
 25 courtesy 29 consume
 26 shuttle 30 captured
 27 cornerstone

E 31 over/down 33 off 35 along with
 32 off 34 away

F 36 of 38 with 40 in
 37 on 39 on

G 41 jump out of my skin 44 bird's eye view
 42 at lightning speed 45 make ends meet
 43 the apple of her eye

H 46 objective 49 impressive
 47 unpredictably 50 treatment
 48 memorable

I 51 ... is not so/as interesting as ...
 52 ... despite the fact that ...
 53 ... pointed out that the car ...
 54 ... third novel will be published ...
 55 ... being talked about ...

J (Suggested answers)

1 Dear Sir/Madam,

I recently saw your advertisement in the newspaper for a tour guide and I would like to apply for the post.

For the past six years I have been working as a clerical assistant in an office, but as I don't meet many people, I am looking for a change. I would really like the challenge that this post would present and as I'm very good at relating to people I'm sure that I would be perfect for the job.

I enclose my current curriculum vitae and would be able to attend an interview whenever it suits you.

I eagerly await your response and look forward to meeting you.

Yours faithfully,

2 One day Nikki was sitting at the checkout as she normally did on a Saturday evening. Unlike most Saturday evenings, this was a particularly quiet one and Nikki was starting to get bored. Her eyes started wondering around the shop and she began to think of things she could have been doing instead of sitting there.

Just then her friend Melina walked in and they started talking about what they had been up to. They hadn't noticed the customer who had come in behind Melina and they both jumped when they saw him at the checkout. Nikki was expecting to see him unload his basket of food onto the conveyor belt. When he suddenly pulled out a gun, Nikki and Melina screamed. He told them to lie on the ground.

Then he vanished. A moment later the cashier was in the street looking for help.

Marking Scheme for Tests 1 A / 1 B

A: 6 items x 2 points each = 12
B: 10 items x 1 point each = 10
C: 7 items x 2 points each = 14
D: 7 items x 2 point each = 14
E: 5 items x 1 point each = 5

F: 5 items x 1 point each = 5
G: 5 items x 1 point each = 5
H: 5 items x 1 point each = 5
I: 5 items x 1 point each = 5
J: Writing = 25

Total 100 : 5 = 20.0

TEST 2 A (Units 3 - 4)

(Time: 80 minutes)

A You are going to read a magazine article about a young woman studying French in Paris. Seven sentences have been removed from the article. Choose from the sentences A - H the one which fits each gap (1-6). There is one extra sentence which you do not need to use. There is an example at the beginning (0).

It was worth breaking the ice

Laura van Bilderbeek, 18, had always wanted to learn French in Paris. She'd loved the language since studying it at school in the United States, but when her family moved back to London she was disappointed to find that her high-school French wasn't good enough for her to take French A-level. **0** **B** She wanted to pick it up in a real environment rather than attending a course in England, so she decided to go to Paris.

Her first two weeks in Paris were a bit lonely, but then she met a couple of American girls who encouraged her to enrol at the Sorbonne. She loved it from the start. **1** 'At the moment I'm reading Baudelaire for my oral exam.'

She says her class is great fun, partly because of the mixture of nationalities. Because the students come from so many countries, however, there is a temptation to speak in English, which most of them know well. **2**

She also forces herself to attend general lectures at the Sorbonne to improve her French. She is especially interested in the ones on art, philosophy and history.

She says it can be a bit frightening sitting in a huge auditorium with lots of people you don't know, but it's the only way to meet French students. **3** They are not always very friendly at first, but she says it's worth the effort once you break the ice. She adds that it's lucky that she's a bit of an extrovert.

Accommodation in Paris isn't a big problem, and the Sorbonne has an office which can help with finding lodgings. **4** Laura lives with a very old woman in Montparnassee. Laura says: 'She's 94 and she tells incredible stories about when she was young. She can remember when the pavements were made of wood and there were horses and carriages in the streets. **5** And if I lived with someone my own age, they wouldn't be around all day to talk to me and help me with my homework.'

She loves wandering around Paris in the daytime, and finds that the only problem in Paris is the expense. **6** Bars and clubs are also very expensive. She takes pleasure in going to the cinema, though, where students get a huge reduction.

- | |
|---|
| <p>A At lectures she makes herself go up and speak to other students.</p> <p>B During her year out, she decided to learn it on her own.</p> <p>C A coffee can cost more than two pounds, and even food in the supermarket is more expensive than in London.</p> <p>D Laura wishes learning French was not so slow and difficult, but feels she is making progress.</p> <p>E 'The classes are stimulating and you learn about literature as well as phonetics,' Laura says.</p> <p>F I get a real sense of history talking to her.</p> <p>G They often place you with a family so you can practise your French.</p> <p>H Laura has managed to resist the temptation by insisting on speaking French to everyone.</p> |
|---|

B Fill in the appropriate word(s) from the list. Use the word(s) only once.

ecological, unspoilt, traffic, to whiten, orbiting, there is a need, severe, easily, forms, volcanic

- | | | | |
|----------|------------------|----------|------------------|
| 7 | nature | 12 | damage |
| 8 | chaos | 13 | eruption |
| 9 | around the earth | 14 | accessible |
| 10 | stained teeth | 15 | of entertainment |
| 11 | balance | 16 | for action |

C Choose the correct item.

- 17 The sunlight, reflected off the bright white buildings, was **(lighting/dazzling)**.
 18 It was so cold I started to **(shiver/tremble)**!
 19 It took us three months to **(renew/renovate)** the old cottage.
 20 We stayed up all night to watch the **(dawn/dusk)**.
 21 Every night dad **(switches/winds)** the clock.
 22 When her husband was kidnapped, Janet **(virtually/visually)** gave up hope of ever seeing him again.
 23 We stood in the **(pouring/gloomy)** rain, without umbrellas, waiting for a taxi.

D Fill in the gaps with the appropriate word(s) from the list below:

bid, prosperity, fragrant, reduction, boom, swayed, vigorously

- 24 House prices have risen dramatically since the economic
- 25 I went to the auction to for a set of antique chairs.
- 26 The room was with the smell of fresh flowers.
- 27 He shook her hand and led her into his office.
- 28 The tree's branches in the wind.
- 29 The workers went on strike in protest over a pay
- 30 His wealth and were due to his wise financial investments.

E Fill in the gaps with the appropriate word(s) from the list below:

hailstorm, mild, drizzle, gentle wind, cloudburst

I woke up to grey skies and wondered if I'd have to cancel my trip to the beach. However, when I stepped outside it was **(31)**, not too cold, and the trees were swaying in a **(32)** It looked as if I would still be able to go. I went back indoors to fetch my bag, but when I came back outside, it had started to **(33)** I ran back for my umbrella, threw everything into the car and drove off. I hadn't got half a mile down the road before there was a **(34)** I was glad I hadn't been on my bike; I'd have been soaked. The heavy rain was swiftly followed by a **(35)**; balls of frozen rain clattered against the windscreen. Finally I admitted defeat, turned the car round and went back home.

F Fill in the correct preposition(s).

- 36 I feel very optimistic the future.
- 37 When my grandmother died, I invested the money she left me stocks and shares.
- 38 Jack had to leave the army because he refused to comply the regulations.
- 39 Ever since I was bitten by a dog as a child I have been terrified them.
- 40 I can't account the missing money; it must have been stolen.

G Choose the appropriate idiom to fill in the gaps.

backbreaking, in the long term, weather-beaten, in uncharted water, as right as rain

- 41 'Although it will be hard at first, the tax increase will benefit us all,' said the Prime Minister.
- 42 Sandra was ill for ages, but now she's
- 43 The old man had spent his life working in the fields and so his face was tanned and
- 44 Building the wall was work; the bricks were heavy and awkwardly-shaped.
- 45 With this new venture the company is sailing; nothing like it has ever been tried before.

H Fill in the correct word derived from the words in bold.

- 46 Mandy was by the letters of support she received. **OVERWHELM**
- 47 When he leaves school Brain wants to study as he's always been interested in trees. **FOREST**
- 48 When I worked in Malawi, I was well off; for example I had a jeep and a motorbike whereas most people didn't even own a bicycle. **COMPARE**
- 49 We had to use candles for lighting when the electricity broke down. **GENERATE**
- 50 I'd eaten several of the dessert before I realised it had gone off. **MOUTH**

I Complete the sentences below using the words in bold. Use two to five words.

- 51 It was so hot that I could hardly breathe.
day It was I could hardly breathe.
- 52 Katharine doesn't agree with George's political beliefs.
of Katharine George's political beliefs.
- 53 Since it was a holiday, we were off work.
to We were a holiday.
- 54 This is the cemetery where Oscar Wilde is buried.
in This is Oscar Wilde is buried.
- 55 When it had stopped raining, we pitched the tent.
until We waited before we pitched the tent.

J Write an answer to one of the two following questions. Write your answer in 120 - 180 words in an appropriate style, giving the outline first.

- 1 A local newspaper has invited readers to write in with their opinions on the following topic:
Violent sports should be banned. Write an **article** stating your own opinions on this issue.
- 2 Write an **article** about a holiday resort you have visited for a travel magazine.

NAME: _____

DATE: _____

CLASS: _____

(Time: 80 minutes)

TEST 2 A (Units 3 - 4)

A 1 2 3 4 5 6

B 7	12
8	13
9	14
10	15
11	16

C 17	21
18	22
19	23
20	

D 24	28
25	29
26	30
27	

E 31 32 33 34 35

F 36 37 38 39 40

G 41	44
42	45
43	

H 46 47 48 49 50

TEST 2 B (Units 3 - 4)

(Time: 80 minutes)

A You are going to read a magazine article about a football manager. Seven sentences have been removed from the article. Choose from the sentences **A - H** the one which fits each gap (1-6). There is one extra sentence which you do not need to use. There is an example at the beginning (0).

It's a Woman's World

Stephanie Rawden is a housewife and a mother of two who has never played a game of football in her life. Yet every Sunday morning she can be found at her local football ground, where she shouts encouraging words and yells orders at the players. **0** **H**

Although Stephanie wears the typical football manager's 'uniform' of boots, jeans and a thick coat she also chooses to wear make-up and earrings.

1 Her femininity is important to her and helps her present an image she is happy with. But when she walks into the changing room to talk to the team the men don't notice her good looks. They know she is in charge and they listen to every word she has to say.

She believes it is her sharp wit and good sense of humour that help to get the attention of the club. The 29-year-old talks passionately about the team; 'I keep them informed,' she says, 'and I'm not afraid to tell them when they've made a mistake.'

Incredibly, two years ago, Stephanie knew virtually nothing about the game of football. Her husband Lee was the reason she got involved. **2** 'I realised that if I didn't get involved, I'd never see him.'

When she first joined the club, she used her skills as a qualified accountant to become the treasurer.

3 To Steph's surprise the committee elected her as the new manager. With a month to go before the start of the football season, Steph watched dozens of football videos and read everything related to football she could get her hands on. She owes a lot to her husband's patience. However the real battle was trying to earn the players' respect.

'There I was, a mum who'd never played football in her life, telling a group of men how they should play football.' Stephanie recalls that the first few games with her in charge were a disaster. **4** But as the season went on, her confidence grew. By the time the team had won a few games she found that their attitudes had changed. **5** Linby finished fifth in the Nottingham Sunday league in Stephanie's first season. This year they're third in the league and about to get promoted.

When it's freezing cold and the team loses, Stephanie must find herself wondering why on earth she does it. She believes, however, that the victories make it all worthwhile. She not only gets support from her family but from the men on the team. **6** When asked whether she has any desire to play, Steph admits she is quite happy to stand on the sidelines. She is clearly content with showing that a woman can succeed in a man's job.

- A** She feels that just because she is a football manager, she doesn't have to look like a man.
B Then the current manager resigned suddenly.
C Some of the players left because they felt uncomfortable taking orders from a woman.
D She describes them as her second family.
E 'He spent most of the weekend playing football,' she remembers.
F An interest in football is vital for the job.
G The players realised that she was not only serious about her job, but good at it.
H She is, in fact, the first female manager of the Linby Athletic Football Club.

B Fill in the appropriate word(s) from the list. Use the word(s) only once.

mat, to stare, blood racing, to lessen, scrambled, hot, fading, within, a populated, to restore to

- | | | | |
|----------|-------------------|----------|-------------|
| 7 | pre-war greatness | 12 | moonlight |
| 8 | in amazement | 13 | springs |
| 9 | continent | 14 | easy reach |
| 10 | eggs | 15 | of bacteria |
| 11 | through her veins | 16 | the strain |

C Choose the correct item.

- 17 That company used an **(ingenuous/ingenious)** advertising campaign.
- 18 She was caught in a **(sleeting/downpour)** on her way to work.
- 19 Many people in Africa have suffered during the **(drought/dryness)** and many have died of starvation.
- 20 She feels very **(clumsy/harmful)** today as she has already dropped two glasses and a teapot.
- 21 Many **(unanimous/controversial)** issues are discussed on that programme.
- 22 The Biochemist's **(convention/commitment)** is taking place this week.
- 23 They decided to **(prolong/expand)** the business by introducing an import/export department.

D Fill in the gaps with the appropriate word(s) from the list below:

jolly, eruption, wing, commitment, strolling, discoloration, condemned

- 24 The seagull had broken a(n) and it couldn't fly.
- 25 The President has the new outbreak of violence.
- 26 This washing powder will protect your clothing from
- 27 Marriage is a life-long that has to be taken seriously.
- 28 The of the volcano came completely unexpectedly and frightened the residents of the village.
- 29 Many people enjoy along the beach in the late afternoon.
- 30 There was a very atmosphere at the wedding reception.

E Fill in the gaps with the appropriate word(s) from the list below:

sunshine, shower, thunderstorm, windy, cloudless

It was quite **(31)** when they set off on their trip to the country. The wind was blowing so strongly that it almost swept them off their feet. To make matters worse, darkness started falling and they were met with a heavy **(32)** of rain which made them stop and think about going back. The rain was followed by a **(33)** with lots of lightning, which tore the skies, and deafening bolts of thunder. They stayed in the car and they fell asleep. When they woke up they were under a **(34)** sky and brilliant **(35)**; which encouraged them to continue their journey.

F Fill in the correct preposition(s).

- 36 No matter how hard he tried, he couldn't cope the stress of the job.
 37 The clearing was the ideal site their picnic.
 38 He is always very accurate his predictions.
 39 The pupils, being very fond their teacher, gave her flowers on the last day of classes.
 40 The workers benefited the company's new policy.

G Choose the appropriate idiom to fill in the gaps.

weathered the storm, to come to terms with, for a rainy day, water has gone under the bridge, backbone

- 41 He found it difficult the fact that he was unemployed.
 42 She puts a little something aside each month
 43 Despite financial difficulties we and business is now booming.
 44 His diligence has led him to becoming the of the company.
 45 It's been a long time since we saw them, and I'm sure a lot of

H Fill in the correct word derived from the words in bold.

- 46 Since there was not incriminating evidence the judge dismissed the case.
 47 His made a lot of people view him suspiciously.
 48 Students of English as a second language have difficulty in understanding accents.
 49 In the old days, a radio was called a
 50 We went to a fashion show of designer clothes.

**SUBSTANCE
PREDICT**

**REGION
WIRE
EXCLUDE**

I Complete the sentences below using the words in bold. Use two to five words.

- 51 It was such a funny joke that I couldn't help laughing.
so It was that I couldn't help laughing.
 52 Her father wouldn't agree to her riding a motorbike.
of Her father riding a motorbike.
 53 Since it was very hot, they went for a swim.
to They went the heat.
 54 This is the church where they got married.
in This is the church married.
 55 When their mother left, they raided the fridge.
until They waited before they raided the fridge.

J Write an answer to one of the two following questions. Write your answer in 120 - 180 words in an appropriate style, giving the outline first.

- 1 Your school is holding a composition competition. The competition rules state that you must write about the following question: *What are the advantages and disadvantages of being an only child?*
 Write a **composition** for the competition.
- 2 Write a short **article** about the dangers of sunbathing for a medical journal.

NAME: _____

DATE: _____

CLASS: _____

(Time: 80 minutes)

TEST 2 B (Units 3 - 4)

A 1 2 3 4 5 6

B 7 12
 8 13
 9 14
 10 15
 11 16

C 17 21
 18 22
 19 23
 20

D 24 28
 25 29
 26 30
 27

E 31 32 33 34 35

F 36 37 38 39 40

G 41 44
 42 45
 43

H 46 47 48 49 50

I

51		51 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
52		52 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
53		53 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
54		54 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
55		55 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>

WRITING

J

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

TEST 2 A – KEY

- | | | | | | | |
|----------|---------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------|--------------------|--------------|-----|
| A | 1 E | 2 H | 3 A | 4 G | 5 F | 6 C |
| B | 7 unspoilt | | | 12 severe | | |
| | 8 traffic | | | 13 volcanic | | |
| | 9 orbiting | | | 14 easily | | |
| | 10 to whiten | | | 15 forms | | |
| | 11 ecological | | | 16 there is a need | | |
| C | 17 dazzling | | | 21 winds | | |
| | 18 shiver | | | 22 virtually | | |
| | 19 renovate | | | 23 pouring | | |
| | 20 dawn | | | | | |
| D | 24 boom | | | 28 swayed | | |
| | 25 bid | | | 29 reduction | | |
| | 26 fragrant | | | 30 prosperity | | |
| | 27 vigorously | | | | | |
| E | 31 mild | | 33 drizzle | | 35 hailstorm | |
| | 32 gentle wind | | 34 cloudburst | | | |
| F | 36 about | | 38 with | | 40 for | |
| | 37 in | | 39 of | | | |
| G | 41 in the long term | | 44 backbreaking | | | |
| | 42 as right as rain | | 45 in uncharted water | | | |
| | 43 weather-beaten | | | | | |
| H | 46 overwhelmed | | 49 generator | | | |
| | 47 forestry | | 50 mouthfuls | | | |
| | 48 comparatively | | | | | |
| I | 51 ... such a hot day that ... | | | | | |
| | 52 ... doesn't approve of ... | | | | | |
| | 53 ... off work due to ... | | | | | |
| | 54 ... the cemetery in which ... | | | | | |
| | 55 ... until the rain has stopped ... | | | | | |

J (Suggested answers)

1 There's no doubt that the bulk of the population are under the illusion that we live in a civilised society. If this is so, then how can the continued toleration of violent sports be maintained?

There's little doubt that a sport such as boxing is exceedingly violent and boxers have suffered death, brain damage and permanent disability from the blows they received in the ring. Martial arts or rugby could be considered violent, but the fact that millions of people watch these sports and they make billions of dollars implies that society may not be as civilised as it thinks. The pleasure that people gain from watching and participating in violent sport surely means that banning them would be an uphill, if not impossible task.

As for the participants; as long as they are able to make rational decisions to participate in these sports, society should not intervene. There is also the danger of driving these sports 'underground', by banning them which would remove official controls and surely lead to even worse incidences of injury or death.

2 Miami Beach, Florida is the playground of the stars. It's got sun, palm trees, golden beaches and heaps of glitz and glamour.

Miami Beach has a 7 mile, 100 yard belt of wonderful white sand. It is a man-made beach but looks totally natural. Weatherwise, the winter, from December to April is the best time but it is also busier and more expensive because Americans from the north descend for a dose of winter sun. Summer is much cheaper but hot and humid - especially when you are away from the beach.

There is plenty to do in and around Miami, Visit the zoos, aquariums and the 45 foot lighthouse - South Florida's oldest landmark. Day trips can also be made to the Everglades - a slow, swampy river that is home to many hundreds of alligators and of course Disney World in nearby Orlando.

If you are travelling on a budget, be sure to contact 'Brigham Gardens' in Sunny Isles - a charming hotel with 14 garden apartments with kitchens for only \$25 a night. Phone 305-531-1331 for details.

TEST 2 B – KEY

A 1 A 2 E 3 B 4 C 5 G 6 D

B 7 to restore to 12 fading
 8 to stare 13 hot
 9 a populated 14 within
 10 scrambled 15 mat
 11 blood racing 16 to lessen

C 17 ingenious 21 controversial
 18 downpour 22 convention
 19 drought 23 expand
 20 clumsy

D 24 wing 28 eruption
 25 condemned 29 strolling
 26 discoloration 30 jolly
 27 commitment

E 31 windy 34 cloudless
 32 shower 35 sunshine
 33 thunderstorm

F 36 with 38 in 40 from
 37 for 39 of

G 41 to come to terms with 44 backbone
 42 for a rainy day 45 water has gone
 43 weathered the storm under the bridge

H 46 substantial 49 wireless
 47 unpredictability 50 exclusive
 48 regional

I 51 ... so funny a joke ...
 52 ... couldn't approve of her ...
 53 ... for a swim due to ...
 54 ... in which they got ...
 55 ... until their mother had left ...

J (Suggested answers)

1 There are several angles that this issue could be examined from. The first angle should be from the child's vision of the world.

A general assumption would be that the child would probably grow up with a fairly rosy (if not distorted) view of the world. They undoubtedly have a very secure, loving upbringing, with doting parents. This is a charming environment to grow up in, but it's possible that this could lead to problems in later life.

One of the most important deprivations of being raised as an only child is the lack of sibling rivalry. The lessons we learn from brothers and sisters are how to both share and compete. This can include sharing toys or emotions as well as competing for them.

An only child could well find these experiences alien to them and could run into trouble when forming adult relationships. It seems a logical assumption therefore, that siblings contribute to a well-rounded character.

2 The world has been made acutely aware of global warming and the hole in the ozone layer in recent years. Ultra violet rays from the sun have reached dangerous levels, but despite repeated warnings from the medical establishment, people persist in sunbathing.

Apart from the obvious pain and discomfort of being sunburnt from spending too long in the sun with insufficient sun block, there are some other far more serious consequences of sunbathing. Sunstroke, a condition of being in the sun too long without head covering, can lead to disorientation, dehydration and possibly hospitalisation. The worst scenario for sun worshippers, however, is the prospect of skin cancer. This disease, which is a potential killer, has increased alarmingly in recent years and due to carelessness in the sun, shows no sign of abating.

The effects of human bodies receiving large doses of ultra violet rays could lead to other serious internal damage. The warnings are there, but it's up to the individual to take heed of them.

Marking Scheme for Tests 2 A / 2 B

A: 6 items x 2 points each = 12
 B: 10 items x 1 point each = 10
 C: 7 items x 2 points each = 14
 D: 7 items x 2 point each = 14
 E: 5 items x 1 point each = 5

F: 5 items x 1 point each = 5
 G: 5 items x 1 point each = 5
 H: 5 items x 1 point each = 5
 I: 5 items x 1 point each = 5
 J: Writing = 25

Total 100 : 5 = 20.0

TEST 3 A (Units 5 - 7)

(Time: 80 minutes)

A You are going to read information about computer-related products. For questions 1-14, choose from the products (A - E). Some of the products may be chosen more than once. When more than one answer is required, these may be given in any order. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Which product or products would you choose:

- if you want an instruction book included? **0**
- to learn about computers? **1**
- if you want to protect your system from trouble? **2**
- if you want to work on different programmes at the same time? **3**
- if you want to produce high-standard printed material? **4**
- if you want to use battery power? **5**
- if you want to test your computer? **6**
- if you want something high priced and well-designed? **7**
- if you want a choice of sizes? **8**
- if you want to work with 'Windows'? **9** **10**
- if you want a computer accessory which does not need to be connected to your PC? **11**
- if you want something ideal for use at home? **12** **13**
- if you want very quick results? **14**

Computer-related Products

Win-Tuner and Ini-Guard

A

This pair of Windows' programmes comes on a single floppy disk. One of them claims to help you improve the performance of Windows and the other is meant to protect your system against damage. The kind of damage they mean is overload caused by programmes you install, use once, and then cancel. Win-Tuner runs thirteen tests on your PC system and Ini-Guard makes copies of Windows Ini files and several others kept in the Windows system directory. For further details of tuning your system refer to the eleven-page manual.

Softvision Word 6 and Excel 5 Videos

B

Softvision produces videos to help people learn how to use software at their own pace and in their own place. Most of the various programmes are explained. Each video is over two hours long in total, but is broken up into a number of sections. The starting time of each section is listed on the cover, so you can simply wind the tape, until you reach the one you are interested in. A presenter provides commentary and answers important questions as the product is demonstrated. There are also shots of the screen, so that you can see what they are doing on the computer.

Sejin Wireless Keyboard

C

A remote-control keyboard that isn't attached to your computer should be an attractive product especially in

the home where TVs and videos already have this capability. This product will work with any PC that has a standard keyboard socket. The keyboard itself is powered by two AAA batteries, and is very compact - about 5.5 inches by 11.5 inches so it can rest easily on your lap or coffee table.

Viewsonic 20G

D

We are getting used to 15 inch monitors connected to PCs these days. Larger 20 inch monitors are still a little bit expensive for the average buyer but they are extremely handy for graphic work or desktop publishing. Viewsonic's model is a stylish-looking piece of equipment which is very light, by 20 inch monitor standards. Even so, it weighs 30 kg, so you should be careful where you place it. The image on the monitor is very clear and steady, displaying Windows beautifully. It can display up to four times the standard screen, which means that you have room to keep several programmes open and in view at the same time.

Smart-Label Printer Pro

E

The idea behind this miniature printer is that users may want to print single labels, or may wish for more professional-looking results than possible from a typewriter. It connects to your PC and has its own external mains power supply. Four sizes are available and they are surprisingly fast, taking only a couple of seconds for each label.

B Fill in the appropriate word(s) from the list. Use the word(s) only once.

charity, a wide, to obtain, forthcoming, to adjust, to strengthen, to overcome, to pick up, in low, climbable, supernatural, news

- | | | | |
|----------|-------------|----------|--------------|
| 15 | range of | 21 | releases |
| 16 | bulletin | 22 | organisation |
| 17 | to sea life | 23 | spirits |
| 18 | peaks | 24 | powers |
| 19 | a language | 25 | my ties with |
| 20 | my fears | 26 | a patent |

C Choose the correct item.

- 27 The cat ate the **(leftover/remains)** of the meal.
 28 The audience was deeply **(effected/affected)** by the soprano's voice.
 29 The **(peak/summit)** time for ice-cream sales is during the summer.
 30 We had a lovely day wandering round country **(lanes/avenues)**.
 31 If you **(subscribe/submit)** to this magazine you will get a discount.
 32 The **(polluting/contamination)** of the water was so bad that all the fish died.

D Fill in the gaps with the appropriate word(s) from the list below:

amateur, commercial, disposal, coach, breed, persecution

- 33 I love that surfing on TV because it gives you a sense of freedom.
 34 His aim was to set up a farm in order to pedigree horses.
 35 For the moment he is a(n) diver but he hopes to become a professional.
 36 The safe of rubbish is very important for public health.
 37 In Roman times the of the Christians resulted in many deaths.
 38 The shouted at his team when they failed to score.

E Fill in the correct particle(s).

- 39 She always looks people who she considers to be inferior.
 40 Terry asked me out for a date but I turned his offer
 41 His teacher encouraged him to keep the excellent work he was doing.
 42 Liz was carried by his deceitful promises and trusted him.
 43 After his father died, John took the management of the company.

F Fill in the correct preposition(s).

- 44 Be quiet and try to concentrate your homework.
 45 Don't blame me the accident; it was purely James' fault.
 46 She takes pride her expensive china tea set.
 47 They were refused admittance the club because they were under age.
 48 Grandfather asked the boys to be quiet and leave him peace.

G Choose the appropriate idiom to fill in the gaps.

a light heart, rolling in money, fair game for, the name of the game, out of the blue

- 49 The private lives of Hollywood stars should not be news reporters.
 50 I hadn't expected them for dinner; they just dropped by
 51 Don't take the matter with It's really important!
 52 'Success' is and we must all work hard for it.
 53 Paul won the football pools and now he's

H Fill in the correct word derived from the words in bold.

- 54 I don't want to go to the cinema. Is there another? **ALTERNATE**
- 55 It took him some time to make on his TV set so he could watch his favourite programmes. **ADJUST**
- 56 After certain had been made, the spacecraft was ready to go. **MODIFY**
- 57 She is so that one never knows what her next step will be. **PREDICT**
- 58 She thought that his rudeness was the most thing she had every experienced. **GRACE**

I Complete the sentences below using the words in bold. Use two to five words.

- 59 The teacher made him rewrite his homework.
to He his homework, by the teacher.
- 60 Somebody ruined her vegetable garden.
had She up.
- 61 Your room needs tidying up.
have You need up.
- 62 She couldn't decide which dress to buy.
make She couldn't which dress to buy.
- 63 It is said that she was a famous athlete.
been He a famous athlete.

J Write an answer to one of the two following questions. Write your answer in 120 - 180 words in an appropriate style, giving the outline first.

- 1 As you were standing in a queue in a central bank, you witnessed a robbery.
Write a **statement** for the police.
- 2 You work for an estate agent and you have recently visited three houses for a potential buyer.
Write a **report** for your boss, describing the houses, their facilities and commenting on their good and bad points.

NAME: _____

DATE: _____

CLASS: _____

(Time: 80 minutes)

TEST 3 A (Units 5 - 7)

- A 1 3 5 7 9 11 13
- 2 4 6 8 10 12 14

- B 15 21
- 16 22
- 17 23
- 18 24
- 19 25
- 20 26

- C 27 30
- 28 31
- 29 32

- D 33 36
- 34 37
- 35 38

- E 39 40 41 42 43

- F 44 45 46 47 48

- G 49 52
- 50 53
- 51

- H 54 55 56 57 58

I	59		59 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
	60		60 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
	61		61 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
	62		62 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
	63		63 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>

WRITING

J

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

TEST 3 B (Units 5 - 7)

(Time: 80 minutes)

A You are going to read information about useful accessories. For questions (1-14), choose from the products (A - H). Some of the products may be chosen more than once. When more than one answer is required, these may be given in any order. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Which accessory or accessories:

- is popular with athletic people? 0 D
- is useful to disco-dancers? 1
- is an English invention? 2
- comes with a free gift? 3
- comes from Japan? 4
- is for people without much spare money? 5
- is made in a range of colours? 6
- help those with busy lives? 7 8
- are popular with travellers? 9 10
- are available in male and female styles? 11 12
- are made from recycled materials? 13 14

Accessories

Waist Pouch

A

Flexi-Belt

B

This is the ideal accessory for people who find they have too many loose items with them to fit in their pockets. Clip one of our new waist pouches around you and keep everything together without the inconvenience of a bag. Neat-looking and fashionable, it's perfect for travelling when you want to keep your important items extra safe. And for those of you who enjoy discos but don't like dancing round your bag on the floor, this is the solution. Buy one now while stocks last ...

Our latest fashion item is great for those of you on a budget - you get two for the price of one! Why? Because the flexi-belt is reversible! For day time wear - at work, at meetings etc - it has a smart dark-brown leather exterior, the perfect compliment to any outfit. Turn it over and have a glittering gold - or silver - surface which is perfect for evening wear and can make any outfit look fantastic. Those of you with busy lives will find this accessory particularly useful - if you have to go out straight after work, just turn over your belt and you're ready to go.

Organiser Bag

C

How many hours of your life have you spent looking for something at the bottom of your bag? You can spend that time doing something more useful if you buy one of our organiser bags! Its many pockets provide you with a place for everything so you know exactly where something is when you want it. Those of you who are often rushed or busy will find it changes your lives! Moreover, with every purchase we'll give you a fold-away umbrella completely free! So order one now, and tell your friends about this fantastic offer too!

Speedometer Watch

D

Athletes will be thrilled with this new speedometer watch from Japan. It doesn't just enable you to time your exercise, but will also congratulate you on your results - it will play your National Anthem as you cover various stages of your target distance! Extra design features include a luminous face and pressure gauge, and the model is water-resistant. Buy one for yourself or as an imaginative gift. Our watch is suitable for all ages.

Umbrella Hat

E

This new product made in England stops the rain from ruining your day. How? Because it sits in your head and not in your hands! This ingenious umbrella means that you can carry on with whatever you're doing despite a shower or two! You open it and then attach it to your head using the adjustable band and then continue as before. It's so simple! Gardening, shopping, walking the dog, fishing and thousands of other activities are all made more pleasurable by our

umbrella hat. And you can even select the colour you want as we have a wide range available - while stocks last.

Wrist-Grip Purse

F

Our grip-your-purse is designed especially for people who tend to forget where they've put things or who are always looking for their purses when they get to the till at the supermarket. It's a simple device - made of water-proof canvas with a zip fastener, it attaches to your wrists with velcro so that it can be taken off quickly and easily. We have a variety of designs intended to cater for a range of individual tastes, with larger styles for men and a petite range for women.

Mini-Mac

G

The mini-mac is just the job for people on the move or who like travelling - it folds away to the size of a tennis ball and weighs no more than one! You'll hardly notice it's in your bag, but you'll certainly appreciate it when it's raining! Complete with hood, double-sealed seams and full in length, we guarantee it will keep off any shower. Moreover, it's made from 100% recycled materials so when you buy it you'll be helping the environment too!

Watch Ring

H

As part of our 'environmentally friendly' range we have included this magnificent watch ring. Combining fashion with practicality, we have produced a watch that is made from recycled drinks cans and which fits on your finger! The adjustable strap means that you won't have any trouble finding one to fit and we have produced styles to incorporate both male and female tastes. It's an eye-catching accessory and unusual too. Buy one and be different!

B Fill in the appropriate word(s) from the list. Use the word(s) only once.

to power, to give it, stressful, the saying, poorly-lit, troubled, pitiless, sudden, the road, widespread, to reach, comic

- 15 to success
- 16 a generator
- 17 mood changes
- 18 streets
- 19 as goes
- 20 one more go

- 21 strips
- 22 a destination
- 23 cruelty
- 24 belief
- 25 conscience
- 26 life

C Choose the correct item.

- 27 The little boy followed the **(lane/track)** left by the bear in the snow.
 28 The President's declining health had a great **(impact/collision)** on the country's stability.
 29 She claims to be a(n) **(inheritor/descendant)** of Queen Victoria.
 30 Expensive **(counterfeit/artificial)** flowers almost look like real ones.
 31 The National Bank is going to **(recruit/subscribe)** new trainees in October.
 32 Their dog always eats the **(leftovers/remnants)** after dinner.

D Fill in the gaps with the appropriate word(s) from the list below:

advertisement, extinct, acquired, consultation, entrepreneur, register

- 33 Her with the doctor lasted half an hour.
 34 'Brillo' washing up liquid is bound to win the best of the year award.
 35 He's a real; he has so many different business interests.
 36 If many more elephants are killed, the species will soon become
 37 Before you join the swimming club, you have to as a member.
 38 I've recently a taste for olives.

E Fill in the correct particle(s).

- 39 Can you look this word in the dictionary please?
 40 Water turns ice when it freezes.
 41 He carried his duties as a diplomat very successfully.
 42 Please keep the subject of religion because somebody might be offended.
 43 How did you come those beautiful antique chairs?

F Fill in the correct preposition(s).

- 44 Should I refer him as Mr Smith or Jim?
 45 She always puts the blame her sister when something wrong happens.
 46 He's very proud his brand new car.
 47 Her husband has a real taste cigars.
 48 They store a wide variety wines in that shop.

G Choose the appropriate idiom to fill in the gaps.

has money to burn, pitch dark, struck it rich, once in a blue moon, screamed blue murder

- 49 When Phil bought that shop, he really!
 50 Living so far apart means they see each other
 51 During the power cut it was; it was impossible to see or do anything.
 52 When she saw the spider in her bath she
 53 You'd think Sheila from the amount she spends on clothes.

H Fill in the correct word derived from the words in bold.

- 54 The of the secretarial department was undertaken by Mrs Smith. **ADMINISTRATE**
- 55 His parents refused to support him and he was forced to live **DEPEND**
- 56 He hasn't got the to work hard enough for a promotion. **MOTIVE**
- 57 Everybody likes Debbie because of her and tolerance. **GENEROUS**
- 58 The day of the President's was a day of national mourning. **ASSASSINATE**

I Complete the sentences below using the words in bold. Use two to five words.

- 59 Her mother made her do the washing-up.
to She the washing-up by her mother.
- 60 Someone stole his motorbike.
had He stolen by someone.
- 61 I think that the kitchen needs painting.
be I think that painted.
- 62 They couldn't decide whether to go out or stay in, that night.
up They couldn't whether to go out or stay in, that night.
- 63 It was said that he had been an alcoholic.
have He was an alcoholic.

J Write an answer to one of the two following questions. Write your answer in 120 - 180 words in an appropriate style, giving the outline first.

- 1 You work as a journalist for a newspaper. Write a **report** about a fire that broke out in a block of flats in central London.
- 2 A survey was recently conducted into people's reading preferences. Write a **report** for your boss analysing the results of the survey.

NAME: _____

DATE: _____

CLASS: _____

(Time: 80 minutes)

TEST 3 B (Units 5 - 7)

- A
- | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--------------------------|---|--------------------------|---|--------------------------|---|--------------------------|----|--------------------------|----|--------------------------|----|--------------------------|
| 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 7 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 9 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 11 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 13 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 8 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 10 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 12 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 14 | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- B
- | | | | |
|----|-------|----|-------|
| 15 | ..... | 21 | ..... |
| 16 | ..... | 22 | ..... |
| 17 | ..... | 23 | ..... |
| 18 | ..... | 24 | ..... |
| 19 | ..... | 25 | ..... |
| 20 | ..... | 26 | ..... |

- C
- | | | | |
|----|-------|----|-------|
| 27 | ..... | 30 | ..... |
| 28 | ..... | 31 | ..... |
| 29 | ..... | 32 | ..... |

- D
- | | | | |
|----|-------|----|-------|
| 33 | ..... | 36 | ..... |
| 34 | ..... | 37 | ..... |
| 35 | ..... | 38 | ..... |

- E
- | | | | | | | | | | |
|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|
| 39 | | 40 | | 41 | | 42 | | 43 | |
|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|

- F
- | | | | | | | | | | |
|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|
| 44 | | 45 | | 46 | | 47 | | 48 | |
|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|

- G
- | | | | |
|----|-------|----|-------|
| 49 | ..... | 52 | ..... |
| 50 | ..... | 53 | ..... |
| 51 | ..... |  |  |

- H
- | | | | | | | | | | |
|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|
| 54 | | 55 | | 56 | | 57 | | 58 | |
|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|----|-------|

I 59		59 □ □
60		60 □ □
61		61 □ □
62		62 □ □
63		63 □ □

WRITING

J

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

TEST 3 A – KEY

- A** 1 B 7 D
 2 A 8 E
 3 D 9/10 A, D in any order
 4 E 11 C
 5 C 12/13 C, D in any order
 6 A 14 E

- B** 15 a wide 21 forthcoming
 16 news 22 charity
 17 to adjust 23 in low
 18 climbable 24 supernatural
 19 to pick up 25 to strengthen
 20 to overcome 26 to obtain

- C** 27 remains 30 lanes
 28 affected 31 subscribe
 29 peak 32 contamination

- D** 33 commercial 36 disposal
 34 breed 37 persecution
 35 amateur 38 coach

- E** 39 down on 41 up 43 over
 40 down 42 away

- F** 44 on 46 in 48 in
 45 for 47 to

- G** 49 fair game for 52 the name of the
 50 out of the blue game
 51 a light heart 53 rolling in money

- H** 54 alternative 57 unpredictable
 55 adjustments 58 disgraceful
 56 modifications

- I** 59 ... was made to rewrite ...
 60 ... had her vegetable garden ...
 61 ... to have the room tidied ...
 62 ... make up their mind ...
 63 ... is said to have been ...

J (Suggested answers)

- 1 Last Friday on the 19th I was in Barloyds Bank. I'd gone to pay in my wages. I was waiting in the queue nearest the door when suddenly three masked men holding sawn-off shotguns ran in.

We all fell to the floor. One of the gunmen, who had black hair, shot at the security cameras so they wouldn't work. The second one, who was short and rather fat, was watching all of us. He kept shouting in a nervous voice "Don't move or I'll shoot". The third guy, seemed like the leader. He went behind the counter to get the money. I think they had chosen that Friday deliberately because a lot of people got their wages on that day, so there would have been a lot of money in the vault.

After about ten minutes, the third man came back from behind the counter with several bags of money. Still pointing their guns at us, the three of them left the bank. The bank manager raised the alarm and within minutes the police arrived.

- 2 To: Mrs Jancis Norton
 From: Jean White
 Subject: Properties for Sale in Thornbury area

Introduction: As requested, I have investigated the following three properties which might interest you.

Property 1 A spacious semi-detached house with three bedrooms, recently modernised bathroom and large garden. Although ideal in many ways, it is 25 minutes from the centre of town and is not well served by public transport.

Property 2 A cosy two bedroom terraced property, newly decorated and fully-carpeted. It is only five minutes' walk from bus and rail stations, and close to local shops. Noise from neighbours can be a problem with terraced houses. Nevertheless, this house has many positive features including double glazing in all rooms.

Property 3 A large semi-detached house, with three bedrooms and two living rooms. It will need extensive redecoration and therefore is being offered at a bargain price. It is quite close to local facilities and on an excellent bus route.

Conclusion At first sight, Property 1 seemed ideal, but its distance from amenities could be problematic. Properties 2 and 3 are both attractive, but taking everything into account, I fully recommend property 2 as the best within your price range.

TEST 3 B – KEY

- A** 1 A 4 D 7/8 B, C in any order 13/14 H, G in any order
 2 E 5 B 9/10 G, A in any order
 3 C 6 E 11/12 H, F in any order
- B** 15 the road 18 poorly-lit 21 comic 24 widespread
 16 to power 19 the saying 22 to reach 25 troubled
 17 sudden 20 to give it 23 pitiless 26 stressful
- C** 27 track 29 descendant 31 recruit
 28 impact 30 artificial 32 leftovers
- D** 33 consultation 35 entrepreneur 37 register
 34 advertisement 36 extinct 38 acquired
- E** 39 up 40 into/to 41 out 42 off 43 by
- F** 44 to 45 on 46 of 47 for 48 of
- G** 49 struck it rich 51 pitch dark 53 has money to burn
 50 once in a blue moon 52 screamed blue murder
- H** 54 administration 56 motivation 58 assassination
 55 independently 57 generosity
- I** 59 ... was made to do ... 62 ... make up their minds ...
 60 ... has his motorbike ... 63 ... said to have been...
 61 ... the kitchen needs to be ...

J (Suggested answers)

1 On Friday morning in central London a fire broke out in a block of flats. Most residents of the building had already left for work and only a few people were inside at the time of the blaze. They were able to escape with minor injuries.

At 9.20 am the fire alarm sounded at 17-20 Tower Street, central London. Fire and rescue teams arrived on the scene to find flames shooting out of the basement windows. The fire quickly spread to the floors above. Residents who were inside managed to get out of the building by way of the fire escape. Two elderly tenants were helped by rescuers to escape from a third floor balcony. The two tenants, John and Mary Ackerly were treated for the effects of smoke inhalation at St Thomas Hospital and were released shortly afterwards.

The basement, first and second floors of the four-storey building were completely destroyed. Thick smoke filled the third and fourth floors but the damage was minimal.

Fire investigators suspect that the blaze was caused by faulty electrical wiring in the basement. Residents who were left homeless by the fire are taking shelter at temporary housing set up by the Red Cross. Fire chief Rick Marshall commented: 'The buildings in this area of town are quite old. Extra care and attention is needed when replacing the wiring'.

As a result of the fire the city's Building Inspectors will be checking the recently-repaired wiring in neighbouring buildings.

2	Fashion	News	Sports	Technology	Health/Fitness	Home/Gardening
Men	3%	20%	37%	11%	25%	4%
Women	32%	15%	3%	8%	25%	17%

Introduction

The purpose of this report is to analyse the result of a recent survey about people’s reading preferences. One hundred men and one hundred women were asked which magazines they preferred reading: fashion, news, sports, technology, health/fitness, or home/garden.

Men’s preferences

The survey showed that most men prefer reading about sports. This is illustrated by the fact that 37% of men in our survey prefer reading sports magazines. One out of four men prefer health/fitness magazines, while only a small minority prefer fashion and home/garden magazines. Twenty percent of men surveyed prefer reading news magazines.

Women’s preferences

The results indicate that a large number of women prefer reading fashion magazines. A minority prefer reading sports magazines and only 8% prefer technology magazines. Some women are concerned about their health. This is shown by the fact that one in four women prefer reading health/fitness magazines. Only 15% of women prefer news magazines while a slightly higher percentage prefer home/gardening magazines.

Conclusion

On the whole, most men prefer sports magazines, while most women prefer fashion magazines. A small percentage of men and women read technology magazines while it is shown that both 25% of men and women prefer health/fitness magazines.

Marking Scheme for Tests 3 A / 3 B

A: 14 items x 1 point each = 14
B: 12 items x 1 point each = 12
C: 6 items x 2 points each = 12
D: 6 items x 2 point each = 12
E: 5 items x 1 point each = 5

F: 5 items x 1 point each = 5
G: 5 items x 1 point each = 5
H: 5 items x 1 point each = 5
I: 5 items x 1 point each = 5
J: Writing = 25

Total 100 : 5 = **20.0**

'Use of English' Section (pp. 182 - 196)

➤ **'Key' Word Transformations**

- 1** 1 ... weeks since I (last) played ...
2 ... still hasn't cleaned ...
3 ... didn't leave until ...
4 ... went to the gym was ...
5 ... has been learning Japanese for ...
6 ... 've never seen such as ...
7 ... is it since Sally got ...
8 ... time he went jogging was ...
9 ... switched off the TV when ...
10 ... has been preparing dinner for ...
11 ... haven't seen her since ...
12 ... been on a picnic for ...
13 ... met such a nice ...
14 ... started working here ...
15 ... still haven't done ...
- 2** 1 ... is needed to make ...
2 ... so sad that ...
3 ... are few eggs left ...
4 ... is considered ...
5 ... gave us very little ...
- 3** 1 ... was too ill to go ...
2 ... were rather disappointed ...
3 ... isn't tall enough ...
4 ... eating out to cooking ...
5 ... had difficulty (in) understanding ...
6 ... was allowed to go ...
7 ... us a week to paint ...
8 ... was made to rewrite ...
9 ... you mind speaking ...
10 ... found it difficult to ...
- 4** 1 ... may not have stolen ...
2 ... like me to help you ...
3 ... mind if I used ...
4 ... needn't have given me ...
5 ... must have prepared ...
6 ... need to spend ...
7 ... may be going ...
8 ... is likely to accept ...
9 ... can't have attended ...
10 ... we meet outside ...
11 ... don't need/need not wear ...
12 ... must not walk ...
13 ... may be asleep ...
14 ... Julie have to leave ...
15 ... will probably move ...
- 5** 1 ... only he could ...
2 ... wish you had listened ...
3 ... 'd rather Sheila had told ...
4 ... I hadn't lost ...
5 ... provided you recharge ...
6 ... were you I would practise ...
7 ... regret telling/having told her/that I told her ...
8 ... wish you would stop talking ...
9 ... I could watch ...
10 ... as though he were ...
11 ... (about/high) time she went ...
12 ... had better shop interrupting ...
13 ... would have been better if ...
14 ... would sooner Mark posted ...
15 ... would not have missed ...
16 ... you would stop biting ...
17 ... had better take ...
18 ... as long as you have ...
19 ... for her courage ...
20 ... unless you put ...
- 6** 1 ... had his leg put ...
2 ... has the house cleaned ...
3 ... make me come ...
4 ... is being held ...
5 ... is said to have been ...
6 ... loves being told ...
7 ... will have been completed ...
8 ... is going to be reported ...
9 ... had the flowers delivered ...
10 ... has to be vaccinated ...
11 ... was made to go ...
12 ... was known to be ...
13 ... had wine spilled ...
14 ... has had her purse stolen ...
15 ... can be found ...
- 7** 1 ... suggested (that) they should try ...
2 ... accused Erik of ruining/having ruined ...
3 ... begged me not to tell ...
4 ... denied breaking the ...
5 ... warned us not to go ...
6 ... wondered whether she would ...
7 ... promised to take us ...
8 ... preferred to cook rather than ...
9 ... reminded Janet to switch off ...
10 ... apologised to Sally for being ...
11 ... agreed to help me ...
12 ... offered to help her ...
13 ... threatened to punish me ...
14 ... exclaimed that the painting was ...
15 ... invited them to his place ...
16 ... wondered if/whether she would behave ...
17 ... refused to wash all those ...
18 ... suggested that they should ...

- 19 ... admitted telling/having told/that he had told ...
 20 ... accused me of losing/having lost ...
 21 ... advised me to take ...
 22 ... promised to lend ...

- 8** 1 ... had to feed ...
 2 ... would not have to type ...
 3 ... said that Jordan could tell ...
 4 ... Helen didn't have to ...
 5 ... told me that they might ...
 6 ... would be able to go ...
 7 ... if he could go out ...
 8 ... wouldn't have to prepare ...
 9 ... said that she must be ...
 10 ... would be able to cancel ...

- 9** 1 ... the cabinet which contains ...
 2 ... none of which is ...
 3 ... most of whom were ...
 4 ... the hotel where we stayed ...
 5 ... who John was talking to ...
 6 ... the teacher whose class ...
 7 ... which was very nice of ...
 8 ... with whom I spent ...
 9 ... of the film, which was ...

- 10** 1 ... run because of its ...
 2 ... in case Susan is ...
 3 ... as it was going to ...
 4 ... for fear he might/should ...
 5 ... to avoid being ...
 6 ... prevent the children from finding ...
 7 ... the reason for his resignation ...
 8 ... and as a result ...
 9 ... prevent the rain from getting ...
 10 ... so as to pass ...
 11 ... in spite of being/despite being ...

- 11** 1 ... in a very sweet way ...
 2 ... worked harder than ...
 3 ... dances/can dance as well as ...
 4 ... the best photograph ...
 5 ... is less sociable than ...
 6 ... more he practises the better ...
 7 ... to sound similar to ...
 8 ... the most comfortable hostel ...
 9 ... as many hours as ...
 10 ... is as imaginative as ...

➤ **Mixed 'Key' Word Transformations**

- 12** 1 ... have to weed ...
 2 ... isn't far from my ...
 3 ... is it/has it been since ...
 4 ... 'd rather not take ...

- 5 ... have run out of ...
 6 ... apologised (to me) for calling ...
 7 ... put out the fire with ...
 8 ... haven't been camping for ...
 9 ... you heard from the ...
 10 ... had had the car serviced ...
 11 ... is said to be ...
 12 ... was too tired to ...
 13 ... has been able to ...
 14 ... were made to stay ...
 15 ... gave up eating meat years ...
 16 ... reminded Peter to go to ...
 17 ... turned out to be ...
 18 ... can't have known about ...
 19 ... you object to my/me ...
 20 ... necessary (for you) to speak ...
 21 ... being short, James is ...
 22 ... takes me twenty minutes ...
 23 ... are forbidden to take ...
 24 ... danced except (for) ...
 25 ... doesn't approve of ...
 26 ... was chosen by ...
 27 ... believe that he is ...
 28 ... was postponed because of ...
 29 ... is not used to speaking ...
 30 ... so cold that I could ...
 31 ... needn't have bought ...
 32 ... so happy that he could ...
 33 ... he had gone ...
 34 ... warned me not to ...
 35 ... could not leave the table ...
 36 ... must have forgotten ...
 37 ... mistook me for ...
 38 ... unless the lights are turned ...
 39 ... ago did you eat ...
 40 ... had better walk ...
 41 ... wonder whether/if Carl telephoned ...
 42 ... had her wedding dress designed ...
 43 ... run as fast as ...
 44 ... you look after ...
 45 ... prefer to go ...
 46 ... play would be such a/play to be such a ...
 47 ... make up my mind ...
 48 ... will have been fixed ...
 49 ... is no possibility of taking ...
 50 ... were in your shoes ...
 51 ... in case it rains ...
 52 ... get ride of ...
 53 ... avoided driving during ...
 54 ... may have woken up ...
 55 ... your opinion of ...
 56 ... give me a hand with ...
 57 ... turned down Paul's ...
 58 ... her intention to go ...
 59 ... bad weather prevented us from ...

- 60 ... suggested going ...
61 ... is interested in collecting ...
62 ... have been invited ...
63 ... looking forward to ...
64 ... the tallest ladder ...
65 ... used to work ...
66 ... is out of order ...
67 ... to catch a glimpse ...
68 ... in order to arrive ...
69 ... took to their new teacher ...
70 ... may have missed ...
71 ... like her to talk ...
72 ... about going out ...
73 ... no point (in) calling Chris ...
74 ... doesn't approve of ...
75 ... old enough to get ...
76 ... are no tickets left ...
77 ... Alison nor Sheila like ...
78 ... is similar to ...
79 ... as if/though they will go ...
80 ... are on good terms with ...
81 ... his fame he has not ...
82 ... need to be ...
83 ... hasn't been delivered ...
84 ... put on weight while I ...
85 ... objects to me watching ...
86 ... because I was too ...
87 ... gave in and made a ...
88 ... and her sister are ...
89 ... pen belongs to ...
90 ... being treated badly by ...
91 ... would rather not learn ...
92 ... agreed that the film was ...
93 ... wish you would/could come ...
94 ... were amused by ...
95 ... suggested (that) I should wait ...
96 ... to France, where he spent ...
97 ... all of which he spent ...
98 ... is thought to have been a ...
99 ... has been/is ten years since ...
100 ... picked up the rubbish from ...
101 ... were made to copy their ...
102 ... is a better singer than ...
103 ... stamp collection is worth ...
104 ... wish I could afford ...
105 ... had to have his house ...
106 ... make any sense of ...
107 ... become a member of ...
108 ... took her hours to bake ...
109 ... was scared of/by ...
110 ... was so heavy that ...
111 ... wasn't sharp enough ...
112 ... first time I've ever ...
113 ... too expensive for me ...
114 ... gave up smoking ...
115 ... and I live close to ...
116 ... spite of the rain we ...
117 ... prefers chocolate to ice-cream ...
118 ... accused Tina of stealing ...
119 ... must have been John ...
120 ... is likely to go to ...
121 ... turned down my application ...
122 ... it had not been for ...
123 ... high/about time the children were ...
124 ... came to/round after being ...
125 ... ought to have called ...
126 ... carried on writing the test ...
127 ... six-hour flight ...
128 ... before had I met ...
129 ... have they got a ...
130 ... has to look after her ...
131 ... takes after her father ...
132 ... regret telling her/regret having told her/that I told her ...
133 ... make up their minds ...
134 ... such a long drive that ...
135 ... Jenny was to blame for ...
136 ... time you had your hair ...
137 ... put off due to ...

➤ Error Correction

- 1** 1 Don't worry about the dog; it will be taken care of **it**.
2 The woman who just came in **she** is our boss.
3 The tea too hot for me to drink **it**.
4 A man whose name **it** was George was looking for you.
5 I will never forget that man who **he** was so kind to me.
- 2** 1 I love holidaying at **the** Lake Geneva very much.
2 She won the lottery and she bought **a** furniture for her new flat.
3 Many people think that happiness is the most important thing in **the** life.
4 She is crazy about **the** Eric Clapton's music.
5 **The** many people have visited this area for the past couple of months.
- 3** 1 Jim say Mary **to** take the book from the shelf.
2 Mother never lets me **to** stay out after midnight.
3 Don't make me **to** do this, please!
4 She heard the door **to** slam behind her.
5 You must **to** never lie.
- 4** 1 When you **will** return we can have dinner together.
2 Don't start doing the exercise unless I **will** tell you so.
3 Tracy will make all her calls after we **will** leave.

- 4 I will go shopping if I **would** finish work early.
 5 I'll wait until you **will** come back.

- 5** 1 I called **to** him twice, but he didn't answer the phone.
 2 They answered **to** my question immediately.
 3 When shall we discuss **about** it?
 4 The train reached **at** the station a few minutes after four.
 5 Children are to obey **to** their parents.
 6 Mary resembles **with** her grandmother.
 7 I regret **for** not buying tickets last week.
 8 We entered **into** the room and sat down on the sofa.
- 6** 1 He lives **too** much farther from school than I do.
 2 Mark was wearing the same colour tie as **was** Tom.
 3 He is **more** taller than his friend.
 4 He is not as clever as **is** Jane.
 5 I'm afraid I cooked **many** too much food for tonight.

➤ Error Correction Texts

- 1** 1 it 6 one 11 of
 2 for 7 the 12 more
 3 ✓ 8 ✓ 13 ✓
 4 had 9 can 14 for
 5 ✓ 10 ✓ 15 much
- 2** 1 ✓ 6 ✓ 11 ✓
 2 the 7 to 12 ✓
 3 for 8 at 13 from
 4 the 9 far 14 being
 5 as 10 had 15 ✓
- 3** 1 much 6 from 11 the
 2 so 7 a 12 have
 3 ✓ 8 being 13 with
 4 to 9 ✓ 14 ✓
 5 of 10 ✓ 15 ✓
- 4** 1 had 6 ✓ 11 ✓
 2 about 7 of 12 out
 3 it 8 the 13 ✓
 4 ✓ 9 ✓ 14 were
 5 be 10 must 15 ✓
- 5** 1 the 6 them 11 for
 2 ✓ 7 of 12 ✓
 3 on 8 ✓ 13 as
 4 of 9 being 14 ✓
 5 as 10 on 15 ✓

➤ Multiple Choice Cloze Texts

1 How to recognise a seasoned traveller

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|------|------|
| 1 A | 4 D | 7 C | 10 D | 13 D |
| 2 C | 5 A | 8 C | 11 A | 14 B |
| 3 B | 6 D | 9 A | 12 C | 15 C |

2 The telephone

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|------|------|
| 1 C | 4 A | 7 D | 10 C | 13 D |
| 2 D | 5 B | 8 A | 11 A | 14 D |
| 3 A | 6 C | 9 B | 12 B | 15 B |

3 Dreaming of Becoming a Lifeguard? Think Twice!

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|------|------|
| 1 D | 4 B | 7 D | 10 A | 13 C |
| 2 A | 5 D | 8 C | 11 B | 14 C |
| 3 C | 6 A | 9 D | 12 B | 15 B |

4 Transport

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|------|------|
| 1 C | 4 B | 7 D | 10 D | 13 B |
| 2 A | 5 B | 8 A | 11 A | 14 C |
| 3 D | 6 C | 9 B | 12 C | 15 A |

➤ Open Cloze Texts

- 1** 1 One 6 should 11 most
 2 next 7 which/that 12 a
 3 with 8 them 13 since
 4 are 9 such 14 there
 5 others 10 as 15 would/could
- 2** 1 far 6 into 11 way/means
 2 that 7 with 12 by/about
 3 Due 8 every/each/per 13 far
 4 been 9 worse 14 our
 5 no 10 by 15 not
- 3** 1 on 6 Have 11 most
 2 wide/large big 7 while 12 where
 3 from 8 yet/still 13 from
 4 some 9 because 14 whatever
 5 the 10 if 15 much
- 4** 1 as 6 which 11 front
 2 still 7 other 12 why
 3 are 8 that 13 up
 4 this 9 By 14 Until
 5 but 10 their 15 will

Revision Section (pp. 197 - 216)

➤ **A Multiple Choice Questions**

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1 B | 21 B | 41 A | 61 D | 81 A |
| 2 C | 22 B | 42 B | 62 C | 82 C |
| 3 A | 23 B | 43 B | 63 A | 83 B |
| 4 B | 24 A | 44 C | 64 D | 84 B |
| 5 C | 25 D | 45 A | 65 B | 85 D |
| 6 D | 26 B | 46 B | 66 C | 86 A |
| 7 A | 27 D | 47 D | 67 B | 87 D |
| 8 B | 28 D | 48 B | 68 A | 88 A |
| 9 C | 29 C | 49 C | 69 B | 89 A |
| 10 B | 30 D | 50 B | 70 C | 90 D |
| 11 A | 31 D | 51 C | 71 B | 91 A |
| 12 B | 32 B | 52 C | 72 D | 91 A |
| 13 C | 33 C | 53 D | 73 C | 93 A |
| 14 B | 34 B | 54 B | 74 A | 94 C |
| 15 B | 35 B | 55 C | 75 C | 95 C |
| 16 C | 36 B | 56 A | 76 B | 96 D |
| 17 D | 37 A | 57 B | 77 B | 97 C |
| 18 B | 38 C | 58 A | 78 C | 98 B |
| 19 D | 39 A | 59 B | 79 C | 99 A |
| 20 C | 40 B | 60 A | 80 D | 100 D |

➤ **B Key – Word Transformation Sentences**

- 1 ... is unusual for us to ...
- 2 ... as long as you bring ...
- 3 ... in case it ...
- 4 ... was hardly anything/anyone in ...
- 5 ... be a better option than ...
- 6 ... you must provide ...
- 7 ... you cannot borrow ...
- 8 ... no point in speaking ...
- 9 ... not like her to be ...
- 10 ... had a discussion about ...
- 11 ... at the age of ...
- 12 ... time you learned/learnt ...
- 13 ... last time I saw Thomas ...
- 14 ... is included in ...
- 15 ... had better see ...
- 16 ... was cancelled owing to ...
- 17 ... gave us permission to ...
- 18 ... was too hot for ...
- 19 ... is responsible for looking after ...
- 20 ... wish I had taken ...
- 21 ... is not being opened ...
- 22 ... do these CDs belong to ...
- 23 ... had difficulty (in) persuading ...
- 24 ... will have to be given ...
- 25 ... is a better painter than ...
- 26 ... in case you get ...
- 27 ... is not easy for Fred ...

- 28 ... last heard from my brother ...
- 29 ... was nobody Lucy knew ...
- 30 ... one of the tyres was ...
- 31 ... tell the difference ...
- 32 ... has tendency to blush ...
- 33 ... us a detailed description of ...
- 34 ... no doubt the boys will ...
- 35 ... until they had painted ...
- 36 ... in order to be ...
- 37 ... was better than we ...
- 38 ... unless she does ...
- 39 ... what day it ...
- 40 ... did not succeed in persuading ...
- 41 ... is a month since ...
- 42 ... following the publication of ...
- 43 ... would rather study engineering ...
- 44 ... looked up to ...
- 45 ... do exactly what the captain ...
- 46 ... be evacuated as a result ...
- 47 ... everybody apart from ...
- 48 ... does not feel like coming ...
- 49 ... borrowed his laptop without asking ...
- 50 ... not like William to be ...
- 51 ... want anybody else to discover ...
- 52 ... in case the CD-ROM is ...
- 53 ... too fast for us to ...
- 54 ... does not matter which recipe ...
- 55 ... has not been to ...
- 56 ... is the same size as ...
- 57 ... the exception of Mr Olson ...
- 58 ... in case you are ...
- 59 ... is estimated to be worth ...
- 60 ... as long as you promise ...
- 61 ... it is not worth staying ...
- 62 ... is supposed to be ...
- 63 ... manage to defeat ...
- 64 ... did not remember anything ...
- 65 ... is unlikely there will ...
- 66 ... is responsible for arranging ...
- 67 ... took/made a note ...
- 68 ... only a few ...
- 69 ... is no point in ...
- 70 ... finished by thanking ...
- 71 ... turned down ...
- 72 ... not interested in going ...
- 73 ... can't have stolen ...
- 74 ... is now in search of ...
- 75 ... is very good at ...
- 76 ... if they were supposed to ...
- 77 ... because I had been painting ...
- 78 ... were given very little ...
- 79 ... soon as Flora (had) left ...
- 80 ... first time Joanna has ever ...
- 81 ... had her theatre costumes designed ...
- 82 ... hate being told what ...

- 83 ... is being designed ...
 84 ... was not thick enough ...
 85 ... is still preparing ...
 86 ... made a decision about ...
 87 ... was too boring for us ...
 88 ... only I had contracted her ...
 89 ... might be delayed so ...
 90 ... does this car belong to ...
 91 ... matter what he tells you ...
 92 ... had better see ...
 93 ... is as interesting as ...
 94 ... wonder if Jacky (has) sent ...
 95 ... the last time you attended ...
 96 ... object to me/my using ...
 97 ... forbidden for visitors to feed ...
 98 ... make up her mind ...
 99 ... I were in your shoes ...
 100 ... regret having taken my mother's ...

➤ C Error Correction Texts

- | | | | |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 | 1 a | 6 despite | 11 which |
| | 2 himself | 7 to | 12 ✓ |
| | 3 in | 8 ✓ | 13 more |
| | 4 ✓ | 9 out | 14 ✓ |
| | 5 bit | 10 ✓ | 15 been |
| 2 | 1 much | 6 itself | 11 little |
| | 2 she | 7 ✓ | 12 ✓ |
| | 3 being | 8 on | 13 ✓ |
| | 4 to | 9 ✓ | 14 ✓ |
| | 5 will | 10 of | 15 that |
| 3 | 1 ✓ | 6 too | 11 ✓ |
| | 2 was | 7 in | 12 very |
| | 3 a | 8 ✓ | 13 most |
| | 4 as | 9 had | 14 so |
| | 5 ✓ | 10 ✓ | 15 some |
| 4 | 1 myself | 6 being | 11 ✓ |
| | 2 so | 7 ✓ | 12 ✓ |
| | 3 her | 8 himself | 13 who |
| | 4 of | 9 quite | 14 some |
| | 5 ✓ | 10 ✓ | 15 the |

➤ C Composition Discussion

- A** 1 A descriptive article about a place.
 2 To write about a place I know and to have my article published.
 3 The editor of the publishing company; people who will buy the book.
 4 A, C, G

- 5 **Para 1:** name and location of place
Para 2: reasons for choosing place
Paras 3 & 4: particular details of the place (sights to see, how to spend free time, etc.)
Final para: feelings and final thoughts about the place.

Note: The name, location of the place and the reasons for choosing it can be included in one paragraph.

- 6 B
 7 Sight, sound, smell, taste and touch.
 8 B, E, F
 9 Static and moving features
 10 Yes. Narrative techniques are appropriate if the description is detailed and chatty.

(Suggested answer)

The Best Place on Earth

London, the capital of England, is situated on the River Thames. Its variety of cultures, wonderful entertainment and bustling streets make it one of the most exciting cities in the world.

There is so much to do and see in London. No visit would be complete without a trip to a market or a large department store. From Portobello Road to Harrods, it is certain that you'll find something to buy. When you get tired of shopping, a stroll through beautiful Hyde Park will help you forget you are in the middle of an extremely busy city.

London is well-known for its amazing night-life. For the theatre lover, The West End is definitely the place to go as the choice of serious plays and musical shows is endless. For those who enjoy eating good food, there are literally hundreds of restaurants to choose from and every taste is catered for. Certainly, a night out in London can be an unforgettable experience.

London is a city that has plenty to offer. It really is the perfect destination if you are looking for something different. No matter what you choose to do, you are sure to have a memorable time.

- B** 1 A letter of application.
 2 To apply for a job.
 3 Mrs Sarah Flavell.
 4 **Para 1:** reason(s) for writing
Para 2: qualifications – previous experience
Final para: closing remarks
 5 Formal language should be used as this is a letter of application to a person who is unknown to us, so the language needs to be appropriate.
 6 B

- 7 1 B, 2 A
 1 B would be suitable for my letter.
 8 B, C, E, F

(Suggested answer)

Dear Mrs Flavell,

I am writing in response to the advertisement in yesterday's edition of 'Local News'. I would like to apply for the position of assistant chef.

I graduated from Hopetown college of Technology with a degree in catering in June, 2000. Moreover, I have passed exams in written and spoken French and therefore am a fluent speaker. In addition, I have worked for 'Chez Nous', my cousin's party food catering company, for a year. While working at 'Chez Nous', I gained valuable experience in catering for large groups.

I am enclosing a curriculum vitae and two references. I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours sincerely,
 Jan Wright

- C**
- 1 A narrative.
 - 2 To enter a competition.
 - 3 The judges.
 - 4 The plot line.
 - 5 **Para 1:** setting the scene
Para 2: before the main event
Para 3: the main event
Para 4: the end of the story
 - 6 Simple past, past continuous, past perfect, etc.
 - 7 In third person.
 - 8 Yes, because those are techniques used in narratives.
 - 9 A, C
 - 10 A, B, D, E
 - 11 no sooner ... than, first, as soon as, while, after that, by the time, finally
 - 12 A, C, D

(Suggested answer)

Don't be frightened, everything's going to be alright,' Tom told his brother Dave, who was clinging to the side of the lifeboat. It was bitterly cold as the waves tossed the boat around like a toy.

Their sailing weekend had started that morning full of excitement and promise but then everything had gone terribly wrong. Two hours into their trip they had sailed into a violent storm. They had managed to get the lifeboat into the water just as their boat began to sink. Now, they were lost at sea, with no sign of rescue in sight.

Suddenly, Dave pointed with a shaking finger to a

huge rock, which was directly in front of them. 'Oh no! We're going to hit it!' he screamed. The boys tried to steer away from the rock with their hands but the boat seemed to have a mind of its own. Just as they were about to crash, the boys jumped into the water and started swimming frantically towards the rock. No sooner had they reached it than they heard a helicopter above them. 'We're down here! We're down here!' they shouted at the top of their lungs.

Later, when they were on dry land, the brothers looked at each other. No words were said but they both knew what the other was thinking – it would be a long time before either one went sailing again.

- D**
- 1 Informal letter.
 - 2 To give information/tell my latest news to my pen friend.
 - 3 My pen friend.
 - 4 **Para 1:** reason(s) for writing
Paras 2 & 3: development (what I like and don't like)
Final para: closing remarks
 - 5 Informal – the letter is to a friend.
 - 6 E, F, H
positive points: B, C, G
negative points: A, D
 - 7 1 B
 - 8 1 B, 2 A
 1 B is most suitable for my letter.

(Suggested answer)

Dear Peter,

Sorry I haven't written for so long but I've been really busy with my new job. So far everything is great and I really love teaching.

First of all, the working conditions are excellent and the environment is very pleasant. What is more, my colleagues are really friendly and I've made many friends. Secondly, the job itself is extremely interesting and challenging and I enjoy it very much. There's always something different to do and I never get bored.

However, there are a few things that I'm not happy about. Firstly, the salary I receive is a bit low but I have been told that I will get a pay rise soon, so I hope everything will be alright. What's more, the children are sometimes naughty which can be very tiring.

All in all, this has been a great experience. I really hope you manage to visit me soon and who knows? Perhaps you'll decide to stay! Please write and tell me your news.

Best wishes,
 Amy

- E**
- 1 A descriptive article about a person.
 - 2 To enter a competition.
 - 3 The judges.
 - 4 **Para 1:** place and time you met him/her
Para 2: physical appearance
Para 3: personality characteristics
Para 4: activities/achievements, etc.
Para 5: comments and feelings
- Note:** Depending on the aspect(s) given in the topic, certain paragraphs may be omitted.
- 5 **Tenses:** simple past, present and future past and present perfect continuous
A variety of tenses need to be used to describe past and present activities/states.
 - 6 Good and bad qualities should be mentioned in order to make the writing more balanced.
 - 7 All qualities need to be justified in order to make the article credible and realistic.
 - 8 The language should be mild.
 - 9 1 C 2 A 3 E 4 D 5 B
 - 10 1 beaming 4 muscular
2 plump 5 shabby
3 freckled
 - 11 (Ss' own answers)
 - 12 (Ss' own answers)

(Suggested answer)**The Most Interesting Person I Know**

I first met Stella on a ten-hour flight to Rome. She was the last person to board the plane and it just so happened that she sat next to me.

Stella is a very graceful woman in her late forties. She has got striking green eyes and the most beautiful smile I have ever seen. Stella has a taste for expensive designer clothes and always dresses elegantly.

Stella has a warm personality and is a very optimistic person. People feel relaxed when they are in her company and this is no surprise because she always looks on the bright side of life. However, she can be a bit forgetful at times. For example, she often forgets people's birthdays but her close friends don't mind.

One of Stella's greatest interests is cooking. She loves to give dinner parties and is well-known for the exotic dishes she makes. She's also keen on pottery and has even sold a few of her pieces to local shops. Stella is one of those rare people who are good at everything they do.

All in all, Stella is a truly remarkable person. I feel very fortunate to have her in my life.

- F**
- 1 An argumentative composition, outlining advantages and disadvantages.
 - 2 My teacher and perhaps other students.
 - 3 Yes, I would. Formal style is always used for this type of composition.
 - 4 **Para 1:** state topic by making a general statement
Para 2: advantages/statements to support them
Para 3: disadvantages/statements to support them
Para 4: a balanced consideration/opinion
 - 5 B, C, F
 - 6 1 D 2 A 3 A 4 D 5 D

(Suggested answer)**The Advantages and Disadvantages of Being a Vegetarian**

Nowadays, vegetarianism has become a trend for people who are in search of a healthier life. However, it can be said there are both advantages and disadvantages for deciding to be a vegetarian.

Firstly, vegetarians feel that there are certain advantages to be gained by not eating meat. They consider substitute foods such as soya, cereals and vegetables are an even better source of protein than meat. It is maintained that such foods are low in fat and cholesterol therefore promoting better health. Finally, by avoiding meat, vegetarians believe they are not eating contaminated food which is often a source of many illnesses.

On the other hand, some people feel that being a vegetarian has disadvantages. For example, such a diet can be boring and tasteless. Also, the choice of food available is often limited when eating out. In addition, not eating meat can often lead to a deficiency in iron and protein which can result in serious health problems. Finally, humans evolved as meat-eaters, so by not eating meat, they might be affecting their very nature.

To sum up, I believe it is a matter of personal opinion whether or not someone eats meat. People are free to decide on their own eating patterns.

- G**
- 1 A transactional letter (giving and requesting further information).
 - 2 To give and request further information.
 - 3 Mr James Marks.
 - 4 Yes, it is.
 - 5 That the style (formal or informal) is appropriate. That all the information in the question has been given in my own words. That all the questions have been asked in my own words. That each paragraph has a topic.

- 6 The language should be formal as Mr Marks is unknown to me.
- 7 **Para 1:** reason(s) for writing
Para 2 & 3: development
Final para: closing remarks
- 8 1 B, 2 A
 I would use 2 A in my letter because it is a formal letter.
- 9 Two.
- 10 Information and questions should be appropriately divided; otherwise one paragraph will be full of questions and the other not.
- 11 A, B, D, E

(Suggested answer)

Dear Mr Marks,

I am writing with regard to your advertisement on the noticeboard of St James School. I would greatly appreciate it if you could provide me with some information about the private lessons for computer programmes.

I am a 19-year-old student and at the moment I am doing my A-levels. I intend to study accountancy at university and I need to improve my computer skills. Therefore, I would be grateful if you could tell me whether Excel and Access are available.

Moreover, I would like to know where and when the lessons will be taking place. Also, I would appreciate it if you could let me know if the lessons will be held on an individual or a group basis. Finally, could you please tell me what the fees are and if it is possible to pay monthly?

Thank you in advance for your cooperation. I am looking forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely,
 Clive Bronson

- H**
- 1 An assessment report
 - 2 To assess the good and bad points of a new campsite which has just opened in the area.
 - 3 The manager (of the international travel agency I work for).
 - 4 I should use formal style.
 - 5 A, C, D, F, G
 - 6 **Introduction:** state purpose and content of your report
Conclusion: general assessment and recommendation
 - 7 A, C, E, F, G
 - 8 In the final paragraph.
 - 9 Yes, because assessment reports should be objective.
 - 10 Present tenses.

- 11
 - **express reality:** as a matter of fact, actually, in practice
 - **make contrasting points:** nevertheless, yet, in spite of, however
 - **express the difference between appearance and reality:** apparently, at first sight, on the face of it

(Suggested answer)

To: Mr F Mortimer, Manager
 From: Susan Taylor, Assistant Manager
 Subject: Lakeview Campsite
 Date: 26 November, 20..

Introduction

The aim of this report is to assess the suitability of Lakeview Campsite for tourists with children.

Sports Facilities and Swimming Pool

The campsite's sport facilities are suitable for both adults and children. For example, younger children can enjoy playing in the campsite's well-equipped playground, while teenagers can make use of the campsite's courts and grounds and organise tournaments and recreational activities. The campsite's owners are very proud of their Olympic size swimming pool which has three diving boards and two qualified and experienced lifeguards. What is more, there are swimming instructors who give free lessons to children.

Bathroom facilities

The fact of the matter is that the bathroom facilities are excellent and well-maintained. In addition, hot water is available on a 24-hour basis. Furthermore, there are changing rooms and lockers for all campers. However, there are not enough showers for everybody. As a result, when the campsite is full, there are often queues.

Restaurant

The restaurant has a wide variety of dishes including special meals for young children and there is a wide choice of dishes for vegetarians. Although some dishes are rather expensive, the prices are generally reasonable. Last but not least, the staff are well-trained and polite.

Recreation Room

The recreation room is large and has a friendly atmosphere. There is a billiards table at one end and table tennis at the other. Moreover, there is a large screen T.V in the middle of the room. Electronic and computer games for children are set up in one corner. The recreation room is open every day from 10 am to 10 pm and it is very popular with teenagers.

Recommendation

To sum up, I would recommend Lakeview Campsite for tourists with children. It is a well-organised campsite with good facilities, high safety standards and helpful staff.

➤ **D Speaking Tests**

Part 1

(Part 1 lasts about four minutes and has to do with socialising and giving personal information. Ss should be able to talk about themselves for two minutes.)

Part 2

(Part 2 lasts about four minutes and focuses on exchanging personal and factual information based on given visual prompts. Ss are given two colour photographs each and they have to talk about them in relation to themselves without being interrupted and helped by the T. They are also asked to comment on each other's pictures.)

Part 3

(In Part 3 Ss are examined in pairs. They are given visual prompts which generate a discussion and they talk with one another. Ss look carefully at the visual prompts concentrating on relevant details. The conversation should not be dominated by one student. Ss have to talk only about the task the interviewer has given them. This part lasts about 3 minutes.)

Part 4

(In Part 4 the interviewer asks Ss questions about matters related to the theme of Part 3. The Ss are either asked different questions in turn or may be asked the same question. Part 4 lasts about 4 minutes.)

Speaking Test 1

Parts 1 & 2 (Suggested answers)

- **Picture A** shows a team of rugby players whereas **picture B** shows a windsurfer alone. The main difference is that windsurfing can be done alone whereas rugby is a team sport.
- I would prefer to do windsurfing because it is very

exciting and I love the sea.

- To do team sports you need to consider our teammates and not be selfish. With individual sports you only have yourself to depend on so you have to concentrate much more.
- People choose to do dangerous sports because they have a desire for excitement in their lives and so are prepared to take risks to achieve it.
- **Picture C** shows students sitting informally in a classroom. They could be discussing their lesson whereas **picture D** shows a teacher talking to some students in a formal classroom situation.
- I believe that students learn better when they are listening to a teacher. They are more likely to concentrate and learn something than if they just sit around talking to other students.
- I believe this is only possible if parents are actually teachers themselves.
- A teacher needs to be kind and patient. They also need to know their subject very well and possess a skill in putting it across in an enjoyable way so that students take pleasure in what they are learning.

Part 3 (Suggested answers)

- SA: I think that you would definitely need to take your passport especially if you are going to a foreign country.
- SB: Well, yes! Otherwise you wouldn't be allowed into the country. What about luggage? You would certainly need to take clothes with you, wouldn't you?
- SA: Oh yes. It would be almost impossible to buy everything you need once you get to your hotel. Well, I wouldn't take an umbrella, would you?
- SB: No, nor an alarm clock, but I think I would take a camera. It's good to take photos of places you visit, isn't it?
- SA: Of course, but don't you think it would be better to buy postcards and take good sunglasses with you instead.
- SB: No, you can always buy sunglasses but you might not be able to buy a postcard of everything you see. At least you can photograph what you want, when you want.

Part 4 (Suggested answers)

- SA: My ideal destination would be one where I could just relax under the hot sun all day, somewhere like Cuba or Jamaica.
- SB: Well, I would prefer to go somewhere cold like Alaska. I live in a hot country so its always sunny. It would be nice to have a change.
- SA: I think you would miss the sun even if you

just went away for a few weeks.

- SA: I would love to just sit on a beach or go swimming all day.
SB: I would go mad doing nothing. I would like to do some kind of activity on holiday such as skiing or snow-boarding.
SA: I believe that holidays should be different from what we do every day, so that's why I would choose to do nothing but sit about on a beach.
- SA: We need holidays to relax and change our routine.
SB: Yes, everyone needs a holiday and when we have two or three weeks break, we can often travel to another country.
- SA: I believe that there are several advantages in travelling alone. Firstly, you can do exactly what you like when you like.
SB: Also you are likely to meet many more people as you will probably feel the need to have some kind of contact with people. It would be impossible to spend a holiday alone without speaking to anyone.
SA: I think that travelling alone also makes a person more independent too.
- SA: This depends on whether you travel in a group or not.
SB: If you stay with a group in a hotel and never explore the local area, you will never get to see the country you are visiting.
SA: Yes, but if you travel alone, you are more likely to explore and get to know the local people and way of life.

Speaking Test 2

Parts 1 & 2 (Suggested answers)

- **Picture A** shows people receiving their food at the counter of a fast food restaurant whereas **picture B** shows people talking to a waiter. They are sitting at a table in a restaurant.
- I would prefer to go to a peaceful restaurant where I can enjoy good food and be served by a waiter. I think that fast food places are noisy and you can't really enjoy your food there.
- People don't have so much time to cook these days and so it is much easier to buy food from a takeaway or a fast food restaurant. Also, teenagers seem to prefer eating burgers to eating healthy food.
- With friends you can talk, laugh and enjoy your

food in a more relaxed way. You can't always be like this with your family.

- **Picture C** shows a teacher helping a student read a book whereas **picture D** shows a young boy working on a computer.
- I think it is easy to learn from a computer as you can take your time doing the lesson and the computer never gets upset if you make a mistake or don't understand something.
- I don't think a computer would be successful at teaching languages because only people are able to hold a real conversation and this is important when learning a language.
- Computers have made our lives easier in many ways by doing the things that a human brain is unable to do. They are also able to store vast amounts of knowledge and information.

Part 3 (Suggested answers)

- SA: For me, the most serious environmental problem is that of pollution in towns and cities.
SB: Yes, it is a serious problem but I believe that forest fires are a bigger threat to the planet.
SA: But if all factories were built outside towns, then there wouldn't be any pollution and people wouldn't suffer from serious health problems.
SB: That's true, but trees provide us with valuable oxygen so if the already destroyed forests are not replanted soon, we are all going to have bigger problems.
SA: I agree. So if the factories are moved and forests are planted, the trees can balance the damage caused by pollutants.
SB: Yes, I believe we have to start taking better care of our natural environment.

Part 4 (Suggested answers)

- SA: I believe that human beings are responsible for all the environmental problems we have nowadays.
SB: Yes, unfortunately when plastics and certain chemicals were first developed, no one saw the problems they would cause.
SA: It would be difficult to stop using these things, but we have to find a way to solve the problems we have.
- SA: One of the major benefits is that things won't be buried under the ground. Many things like plastic never decompose, so they have to be recycled.
SB: And if we recycle all our paper, then not so many trees will have to be cut down.
SA: So recycled materials can be used to make other useful products.

- SA: Global warming is changing our planet quicker than scientists expected. For example, the polar ice-caps are melting and this will result in many low-lying countries being flooded.
SB: Not only that. The hole in the ozone layer means the sun's rays are stronger and more people are getting skin cancer.
SA: Yes and animals are losing their natural habitats. If the land is not flooded then it is drying up and places are becoming deserts, so animals have nowhere to live.
- SA: I think that there will be fewer forests and certainly no animals.
SB: Yes, and most people will be living in northern parts of the world because the south will be a desert.
SA: Because of the pollution many people will have health problems too.
- SA: I think it would be a good idea to live on the moon. At least there wouldn't be so many people there.
SB: Yes, but it wouldn't be as good as living on Earth. The atmosphere is not the same and there is no greenery there.
SA: Maybe at sometime in the future scientists will find a way to make it look more like Earth.

Speaking Test 3

Parts 1 & 2 (Suggested answers)

- **Picture A** shows a man who is very happy perhaps because of something good that happened at work whereas **picture B** shows a man who is standing by a filing cabinet and appears to be very stressed.
- People are happy with their job when they have a good salary and their job is rewarding and stimulating.
- The perfect work environment would be a place where the conditions help people to produce their best and where colleagues are friendly and loyal.
- I would not sacrifice my family for my job because jobs can be replaced but families cannot.
- **Picture C** shows a man working out lifting weights in a gym whereas **picture D** shows a man taking his exercise by riding a bike.
- Both sports help develop a good body and make people fit and healthy. They also help develop muscles.
- Some football fans see others behaving badly and so they do the same. Others use violence as a way of expressing their anger and aggression.
- People should be shown, perhaps on TV or in magazines, what the effects are of leading an unhealthy life.

Part 3 (Suggested answers)

- SA: I believe that the satellite is probably the most important invention in the 20th century. Without this, many other important technological inventions wouldn't have happened. What do you think?
- SB: Yes, I agree, but the computer is also important as our lives have become easier by using computers.
- SA: Yes, but don't forget that without satellites, the Internet wouldn't be possible.
- SB: Neither would the mobile phone, but I don't think it is the most important invention. I also think that highspeed trains should be included in the book.
- SA: Definitely, as travelling in this way has opened up the world to many people.
- SB: These trains also help goods to be transported much quicker, so they are really important to all of us.

Part 4 (Suggested answers)

- SA: Reading a real book is much better than reading it on the computer. Turning the pages of a book cannot be compared to clicking a key on a keyboard.
SB: I think that children would find it more interesting to read from a screen than from a book.
SA: But reading a book has more of an 'atmosphere' than seeing it brightly-lit up on the screen.
- SA: The Internet has really changed our lives. You can find any information you want, you can buy whatever you need and you can even make new friends.
SB: Yes, but many people have sacrificed a normal life to spend hours on the Net.
SA: Just think how it has helped people who are disabled or unable to get out of their homes.
- SA: I believe that scientists will never accept that technology has a limit and as far as they're concerned there are always going to be new

things to discover.

SB: Look at cloning, for example. Where will technology stop? Shouldn't there be a limit?

SA: No. Not if it's going to help improve our lives.

- SA: One of the advantages to living so long would be that you would get to know your great, great, great grandchildren.
- SB: Also you would see new technology and many exciting events throughout the years. However, unless medicine has improved, you might be 150 but too weak to move or understand what is happening around you.
- SA: Maybe by then, technology will have developed so much that we will want to live to be 250 years old!

Speaking Test 4

Parts 1 & 2 (Suggested answers)

- **Picture A** shows a school bus taking children to school whereas **picture B** shows a child riding a bicycle.
- The most enjoyable way is one which is quick and comfortable.
- In my opinion, the most dangerous way would be for a child to cycle as they could easily be knocked off by a car.
- The best way is to travel by car. In this way, you can comfortably enjoy your journey and stop whenever you want.
- **Picture C** shows people playing tennis on an outside court whereas **picture D** shows a swimmer in a pool.
- In my opinion, tennis offers the most exercise as you not only get to exercise but also to enjoy the fresh air.
- I believe (that) winning is more important than taking part because it feels wonderful to be the best.
- No, I don't think they do. They don't do anything more than any other sports person.

Part 3 (Suggested answers)

SA: I think that the curriculum should give lessons that will be useful to people after they leave school, such as car maintenance, What do you think?

SB: Yes, but girls should be allowed to learn about it as well. What about teaching another practical subject such as plumbing?

SA: That's a good idea. But would girls be interested in such a thing? They might find cookery better.

SB: No, boys and girls can learn that from their family. I think plumbing is a good idea. Do you think the curriculum should include computing, first-aid or swimming?

SA: Well, children can learn swimming at the local pool. Many children also learn computing by themselves at home. But I think it would be important to learn basic first-aid.

SB: Yes, what would be very useful.

Part 4 (Suggested answers)

- SA: Most of the games children have are not very educational, even the computer games.
- SB: But don't computer games teach children how to think logically?
- SA: But games nowadays are full of monsters or aliens and that's not very educational.
- SA: Learning 'dead' subjects at school like history or Latin is not very useful, because we hardly ever need these subjects when we leave school.
- SB: Yes, but we can't live our lives not knowing the history of our country or where our language comes from.
- SA: I suppose if you were really interested, you could always read about such subjects in your free time.
- SA: There are so many people nowadays who have finished university or college but who can't find a job. Being over-qualified doesn't mean you'll get the job you want.
- SB: Yes, because everyone needs to work, this means that they have to take any job which will pay them a salary whether it is what they want or not regardless of their qualifications.
- SA: Yes, there are so many people trying to get the same few jobs that people feel the more qualifications they get the more chances they have of getting the job.
- SA: Already many people have lost their jobs because computers can do the work better and faster.
- SB: Yes, but there are some jobs which need people to do them as computers can't.
- SA: I don't think that computers can do every job. There won't ever be a time when people don't work because computers have taken over the job market.



Express Publishing

ISBN 978-1-84216-804-2



9 781842 168042